

Table of Contents 1

Introduction	5
Instrument Cluster	16
Warning lamps and indicators . . . . .	.16
Gauges . . . . .	.20
Message center . . . . .	.22
Information messages . . . . .	.29
Entertainment Systems	39
AM/FM stereo with single CD . . . . .	.39
Satellite radio information . . . . .	.42
MyFord Touch®	46
Infotainment display . . . . .	.52
Voice recognition . . . . .	.54
Listening to music . . . . .	.59
Phone features . . . . .	.80
Information Menu . . . . .	.87
Settings . . . . .	.98
Climate features . . . . .	.109
Navigation system . . . . .	.112
Climate Control	123
Dual automatic temperature control . . . . .	.123
Rear window defroster . . . . .	.127
Lighting	129
Headlamps . . . . .	.129
Autolamps . . . . .	.129
Daytime running lamps . . . . .	.130
Panel dimmer control . . . . .	.131
Turn signal control . . . . .	.133
Interior lamps . . . . .	.133
Bulb replacement . . . . .	.134

Driver Controls	139
Windshield wiper/washer control . . . . .	.139
Steering wheel adjustment . . . . .	.141
Sun visors . . . . .	.141
Power windows . . . . .	.142
Interior mirrors . . . . .	.145
Mirrors. . . . .	.145
Speed control. . . . .	.146
Trunk release . . . . .	.151
Locks and Security	153
Settings, MyKey . . . . .	.154
Creating. . . . .	.154
Clearing . . . . .	.155
System status. . . . .	.155
Remote start, MyKey . . . . .	.156
Troubleshooting, MyKey . . . . .	.157
Anti-theft system . . . . .	.168
Seating and Safety Restraints	171
Seating . . . . .	.171
Manual seats . . . . .	.173
Power seats . . . . .	.175
Rear seats . . . . .	.179
Personal Safety System™ . . . . .	.181
Safety belt system . . . . .	.185
Airbags . . . . .	.194
Knee airbag . . . . .	.203
Child restraints. . . . .	.209

Table of Contents

3

Tires, Wheels and Loading	228
Tire information . . . . .	.228
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) . . . . .	.244
Vehicle loading . . . . .	.248
Trailer towing . . . . .	.254
Recreational towing . . . . .	.254
Driving	255
Starting . . . . .	.255
Brakes . . . . .	.258
AdvanceTrac® . . . . .	.261
Automatic transmission . . . . .	.267
Hill start assist . . . . .	.268
Reverse sensing system . . . . .	.269
Rear-view camera system . . . . .	.271
Roadside Emergencies	278
Getting roadside assistance . . . . .	.278
Hazard warning flashers . . . . .	.279
High-voltage shut-off . . . . .	.280
Fuses and relays . . . . .	.280
Changing tires . . . . .	.291
Temporary mobility kit . . . . .	.293
Wheel lug nut torque . . . . .	.302
Jump starting . . . . .	.303
Wrecker towing . . . . .	.306
Guidance for electric and hybrid-electric vehicles . . . . .	.307
Customer Assistance	310
Reporting safety defects (U.S. only) . . . . .	.317
Reporting safety defects (Canada only) . . . . .	.317

Cleaning	318
Waxing . . . . .	.319
Repairing minor paint damage . . . . .	.319
Cleaning the windows and wiper blades . . . . .	.320
Maintenance and Specifications	324
Battery . . . . .	.328
High-voltage battery . . . . .	.330
Charging the high-voltage battery . . . . .	.331
Motor/Electronics Coolant . . . . .	.337
Part numbers . . . . .	.342
Maintenance product specifications and capacities . . . . .	.343
Vehicle identification number . . . . .	.344
Accessories	346
Accessories . . . . .	.346
Ford Extended Service Plan	348
Scheduled Maintenance	351
Normal scheduled maintenance and log . . . . .	.356
Appendices	361
Index	380

The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2012

CONGRATULATIONS

Congratulations on acquiring your new Ford Motor Company product. Please take the time to get well acquainted with your vehicle by reading this handbook. The more you know and understand about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will derive from driving it.

For more information on Ford Motor Company and its products visit the following website:

- In the United States: www.ford.com
- In Canada: www.ford.ca
- In Mexico: www.ford.com.mx

Additional owner information is given in separate publications.

This vehicle's Owner's Manual describes every option and model variant available and therefore some of the items covered may not apply to your particular vehicle. Furthermore, due to printing cycles it may describe options before they are generally available.

Remember to pass on this vehicle's Owner's Manual when reselling the vehicle. It is an integral part of the vehicle.

SAFETY AND ENVIRONMENT PROTECTION**Symbols in this manual**

WARNING: You risk death or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol.

Symbols on your vehicle

When you see these symbols, read and follow the relevant instructions in this manual before touching or attempting adjustment of any kind.

**Protecting the Environment**

You must play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65

WARNING: Some constituents of engine exhaust, certain vehicle components, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

PERCHLORATE MATERIAL

Note: Certain components in your vehicle such as airbag modules, safety belt pretensioners, and remote control batteries may contain perchlorate material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal. See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate for more information.

Breaking-in your vehicle

Your vehicle does not need an extensive break-in. Try not to drive continuously at the same speed for the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of new vehicle operation. Vary your speed frequently in order to give the moving parts a chance to break in.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE OPERATION

This electric vehicle operates entirely from electricity stored in the on-board high voltage battery pack. There is no internal combustion engine as in a typical vehicle or hybrid electric vehicle, which leads to unique operating characteristics. Familiarizing yourself with these unique characteristics will help ensure optimal performance from your new vehicle.

Normal vehicle operation

Starting: The vehicle is equipped with a Passive Entry, Passive Start (PEPS) system. The key fob must be inside the vehicle in order to start the vehicle. Press the start button while your vehicle is in P (Park) with your foot on the brake pedal. The startup sequence will display on the cluster and 8 inch center stack screen and the green ready to drive indicator light will appear in the instrument cluster, letting you know that the vehicle is ready for driving.

Driving: The electric vehicle driver controls operate the same as a traditional automobile and the vehicle is designed to be driven in the full range of traffic and weather conditions. You will likely notice the lack of sound when driving the electric vehicle which is due to the lack of an internal combustion engine.

Stopping: The vehicle is equipped with a regenerative braking system. Slowing the vehicle adds charge to the high voltage battery which improves vehicle range.

Transmission Operation: This electric vehicle is equipped with a single speed transmission. Torque is delivered to the wheels seamlessly without shifting associated with a normal automatic transmission.

Neutral: N (Neutral gear)

Low: L (Low gear) is designed to mimic the enhanced engine braking available in conventional vehicles. L (Low gear) will produce a higher level of regenerative braking when your foot is off the accelerator pedal. This is normal and will not damage your vehicle.

Reverse: R (Reverse gear)

Unique electric operating characteristics

Your electric vehicle, with its new technology, behaves differently compared to a conventional vehicle or hybrid. Here is a description of the major differences:

Battery: The best battery performance and life comes when the high voltage battery is at a moderate temperature. The high voltage battery is heated and cooled by a liquid cooling loop. The high voltage battery consists of two packs one located under the rear seat and the second located behind the rear seat in the trunk of the vehicle.

Plugging In: The electric vehicle must be plugged in to recharge the high voltage battery. The vehicle is equipped with a high voltage charge port on the front left hand fender for charging. The vehicle comes standard with a 120V convenience cord set which is located in the trunk. This can be plugged into any standard electric outlet and will fully charge the high voltage battery in about 18-20 hours. Ford has partnered with Best Buy to offer a 240V Leviton charger that is capable of fully charging the battery in 3 to 4 hours. The charge port door is designed for convenient “push-push” opening and closing. Press on the door in the location of the indentation to open the door. To close the door, press in the same location until the door has rotated back into position and clicked into place. To charge the vehicle, open the charge port door and plug the charging coupler into the charge port receptacle. You will know the connection has been made when the charge port light ring illuminates the quadrants individually. The light ring will then display battery state of charge in 25% increments.

Braking: Your electric vehicle is equipped with standard hydraulic braking and regenerative braking. Regenerative braking is performed by your transmission and it captures brake energy and stores it in your high voltage battery. This system greatly improves driving range especially in stop and go city traffic.

Driving to optimize range between charges

Your range should improve throughout your electric vehicle's break-in period. Range, like fuel economy in a standard vehicle, can be significantly impacted by your driving habits and accessory usage. For best results, keep in mind these tips:

Tire Inflation: Keep tires properly inflated and only use recommended size.

Drive Habits: Aggressive driving increases the amount of energy required to move your vehicle. In general, better range is achieved with mild to moderate acceleration and deceleration. Also, this vehicle has the longest range when driving at slower speeds. When practical, driving on surface streets instead of high speed highways will increase range. Mild to moderate braking is particularly important since it allows you to maximize the energy captured by the regenerative braking system.

Additional Tips:

- Do not carry extra loads
- Be mindful of adding external accessories that may increase aerodynamic drag
- Observe posted speed limits
- Perform all scheduled maintenance
- Pre-conditioning the vehicle cabin while it is on plug will reduce the energy expenditure on climate control and improve range. Refer to *High voltage battery* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

Frequently asked questions

Question	Answer
What are the series of clicks from the cargo area when I first start my vehicle?	The high voltage battery is electrically isolated from the rest of the vehicle when the key is off. When the key is turned to on, high voltage contactors inside the battery are closed to make the electricity available to the motor and enable the vehicle to drive. The clicks are the sound of these contactors as they close and open during start up and shut down.
How long will my high voltage battery last? Does it need maintenance?	The high voltage battery in the Focus Electric is maintenance free and has been designed to last the life of the vehicle.
Can I flat tow my Focus Electric?	Your vehicle should only be flat towed in emergency situations and never above 35 mph. Long distance towing should be carried out with front wheels off the ground.
How can I get a 240 volt charging station installed at my home?	Ford and Best Buy have teamed up to offer a charging installation. Your Ford dealer will set up an inspection visit by Best Buy, who performs the evaluation and arranges for installation.

REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

Your vehicle has been built to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision but, accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. Damage caused to your vehicle as a result of the failure of non-Ford parts may not be covered by the Ford Warranty. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

DATA RECORDING**Service Data Recording**

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, and service and repair facilities may access or share among them vehicle diagnostic information received through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle. Additionally, when your vehicle is in for service or repair, Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, and service and repair facilities may access or share among them data for vehicle improvement purposes. For U.S. only (if equipped), if you choose to use the SYNC® Vehicle Health Report, you consent that certain diagnostic information may also be accessed electronically by Ford Motor Company and Ford authorized service facilities, and that the diagnostic information may be used for any purpose. See the SYNC® chapter for more information.

Event Data Recording

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal; and
- How fast the vehicle was travelling; and
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded (see limitations regarding 911 Assist and Traffic, directions and Information privacy below). However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access event data recorder information without obtaining consent, unless pursuant to court order or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada.

Note: Including to the extent that any law pertaining to Event Data Recorders applies to SYNC® or its features, please note the

following: Once 911 Assist (if equipped) is enabled (set ON), 911 Assist may, through any paired and connected cell phone, disclose to emergency services that the vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or, in certain vehicles, the activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of being used to electronically or verbally provide to 911 operators the vehicle location (such as latitude and longitude), and/or other details about the vehicle or crash or personal information about the occupants to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the 911 Assist feature. See your SYNC® chapter for more information.

Additionally, when you connect to Traffic, Directions and Information (if equipped, U.S. only), the service uses GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors to collect the vehicle's current location, travel direction, and speed ("vehicle travel information"), only to help provide you with the directions, traffic reports, or business searches that you request. If you do not want Ford or its vendors to receive this information, do not activate the service. Ford Motor Company and the vendors it uses to provide you with this information do not store your vehicle travel information. For more information, see Traffic, Directions and Information, Terms and Conditions. See your SYNC® supplement for more information.

SPECIAL NOTICES

New Vehicle Limited Warranty

For a detailed description of what is covered and what is not covered by your vehicle's New Vehicle Limited Warranty, refer to the warranty information that is provided to you along with your Owner's Manual.

Special Instructions

For your added safety, your vehicle is fitted with sophisticated electronic controls.



WARNING: Please read the *Supplementary Restraints System* chapter. Failure to follow the specific warnings and instructions could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Front seat mounted rear-facing child or infant seats should **NEVER** be placed in front of an active passenger airbag.

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits.

Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

































WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that you use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.















SYMBOL GLOSSARY



WARNING: You risk death or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol.

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

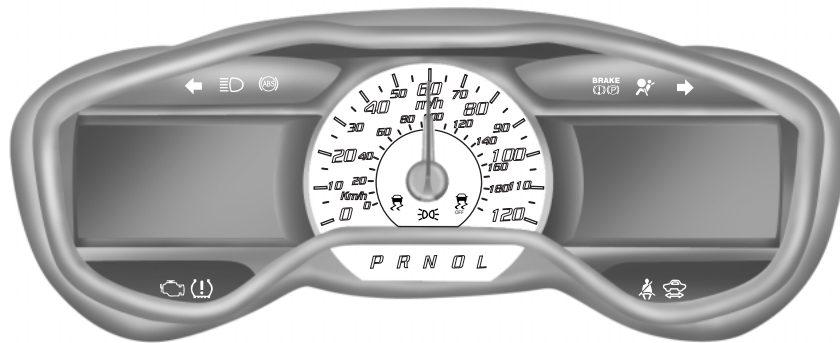
Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description
	Safety alert		See Owner's Manual		Anti-lock braking system
	Avoid smoking, flames, or sparks		Battery		Battery acid
	Brake fluid – non petroleum base		Brake system		Cabin air filter
	Check fuel cap		Child Safety Door Lock and Unlock		Child seat lower anchor
	Child seat tether anchor		Cruise control		Do not open when hot
	Engine air filter		Engine coolant		Engine coolant temperature
	Engine oil		Explosive gas		Fan warning
	Fasten safety belt		Front airbag		Front fog lamps
	Fuel pump reset		Fuse compartment		Hazard warning flasher
	Heated rear window		Interior luggage compartment release		Jack

Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description
	Lighting control		Low tire pressure warning		Maintain correct fluid level
	Panic alarm		Parking aid system		Parking brake system
	Power steering fluid		Power windows front and rear		Power window lockout
	Service engine soon		Side airbag		Stability control
	Windshield defrost and demist		Windshield washer and wiper		

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

These indicators can alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious enough to cause expensive repairs. Many lights will illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any light remains on after starting the vehicle, refer to the respective system warning light for additional information.

Note: Some warning indicators are reconfigurable telltales (RTT). These indicators appear in the information display and function the same as a warning light, but do not display on startup.



Cluster shown in standard measure – metric clusters similar.

Stability Control System

Displays when the AdvanceTrac®/Traction control is active. If the light remains on, have the system serviced immediately.

Stability Control System Off

Illuminates when AdvanceTrac®/Traction control has been disabled by the driver.

Airbag readiness

If this light fails to illuminate when the ignition is turned on, continues to flash or remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. A chime will sound when there is a malfunction in the indicator light.

Anti-lock brake system

If the ABS light stays illuminated or continues to flash, a malfunction has been detected. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Normal braking is still functional unless the brake warning light also is illuminated.

Brake system warning light

To confirm the brake system warning light is functional, it will momentarily illuminate when the vehicle is switched on, to accessory or Ready to Drive mode.

If it illuminates when you are driving, check that the parking brake is not engaged. If the parking brake is not engaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system malfunction. Have the system checked immediately by your authorized dealer.



WARNING: Driving a vehicle with the brake system warning light on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop the vehicle. Have the vehicle checked by your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

High voltage battery low or depleted (RTT)

- Amber: Illuminates when the battery level is low. May also be accompanied by a message suggesting the driver reduce usage of the climate system.
- Red: Illuminates when the battery level is depleted. The vehicle must be charged before it will operate. If you are driving when this occurs, and cannot make it to a charge point, stop the vehicle in a safe place and have it towed to a charge point.

Charging system (RTT)

Illuminates when the 12-volt battery is not charging properly. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. This indicates a problem with the electrical system or a related component.

Door ajar (RTT)

Displays when the ignition is on and any door is not completely closed.

High beams

Illuminates when the high-beam headlamps are on.

Liftgate ajar

Displays when the ignition is on and liftgate is not completely closed.

Limited performance (RTT)

- Amber: Indicates limited vehicle performance due to a cold or hot battery. This will be accompanied by a corresponding message.
- Red: Indicates severely limited vehicle performance due to a cold or hot battery. This will be accompanied by a corresponding message. Drive with caution. Keep the vehicle plugged in when not in use to maintain battery temperature.

Low tire pressure warning

Illuminates when your tire pressure is low. If the light remains on at start up or while driving, the tire pressure should be checked. When the vehicle is first turned on, the light will illuminate for 3 seconds to ensure the bulb is working. If the light does not turn on or begins to flash, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Low washer fluid (RTT)

Illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low.

Motor coolant overheat warning (RTT)

Illuminates when the motor cooling system is overheating. Stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your authorized dealer.

Overdrive cancel and grade assist (if equipped)

Illuminates when the overdrive function of the transmission has been turned off and the grade assist function has been turned on.

Park lamps

Illuminates when the park lamps are on.

Powertrain malfunction/reduced power (RTT)

Illuminates when a powertrain or high-voltage charge system fault has been detected. If the indicator stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Ready to drive

Illuminates once the vehicle has been switched on and is ready to drive. A corresponding message may display stating ready to drive or a message regarding budget if a charge point has not been entered.

Safety belt

Reminds you to fasten your safety belt. A Belt-Minder® chime will also sound to remind you to fasten your safety belt.

Speed control (if equipped) (RTT)

Illuminates when the speed control is activated. Turns off when the speed control system is deactivated.

Stop safely (RTT)

Indicates electrical component fault/failure that will cause the vehicle to shutdown or enter into a limited operating mode. A message may also display.

Turn signal

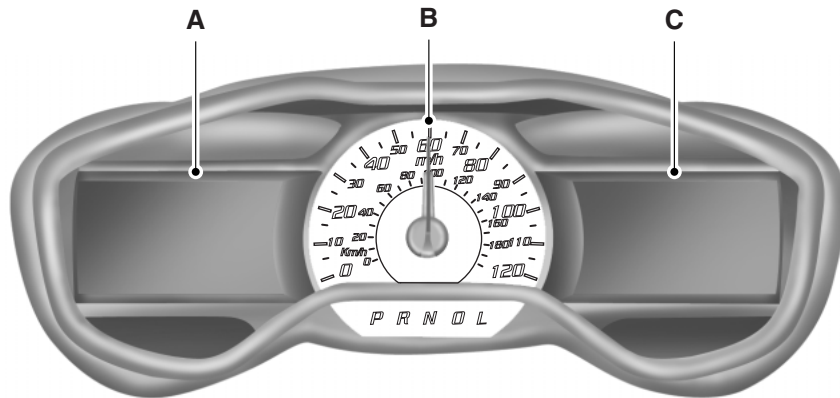
Illuminates when the left or right turn signal or the hazard warning flasher is turned on. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burned out bulb.

Vehicle plugged in (RTT)

Illuminates when the vehicle is plugged in. A corresponding message may display after attempting to start the vehicle.

GAUGES

Cluster shown in standard measure – metric clusters similar.



A. Message center: See *Message Center* for more information.

B. Speedometer

C. Infotainment display: See *MyTouch* for more information.

Common Displays

Note: Some features can be switched on and off through the message center.

Battery Gauge: The high voltage battery gauge appears on the right side of the message center screen. This provides State of Charge, Range Estimate and Regen Display.

- State of Charge - The state of charge for the high voltage battery is shown as a colored fill. The fill color is normally blue. When a low battery condition is reached the fill turns amber. When the battery is depleted the fill turns red. See the Information Messages section for details on associated Low Battery and Depleted Battery warnings.

- Distance to Empty - The Range Estimate in the Battery Gauge is personalized to the driver's key. This is the estimated distance the vehicle will travel before needing a recharge. The Range Estimate is based on your typical energy usage while driving. This includes your Drive Habits as well as your use of accessories such as Climate Control. Your Range Estimate may change immediately when you change your Climate Control settings.
- Regen Display - A circular arrow symbol appears in the center of the Battery Gauge when energy is being recaptured through the regenerative braking system.

Brake Coach Display: The Brake Coach appears after the vehicle has come to a stop. It coaches you to brake in a manner which maximizes the amount of energy returned through the regenerative braking system. By maximizing the use of regenerative braking, you minimize the energy used up by the hydraulic brakes.

Note: Under certain conditions the actual amount of energy returned to the high voltage battery will be less than the percentage shown.

Trip Summary and Lifetime Summary: These will be displayed upon shutting off the vehicle. Trip Summary will appear first, then Lifetime Summary will be displayed. You can toggle between these displays using the up and down arrow keys on the left hand steering wheel controls.

Trip Summary data is from the last power cycle, while Lifetime Summary data is cumulative from the last Lifetime Summary reset done through the Settings menu in the message center.

Trip Summary:

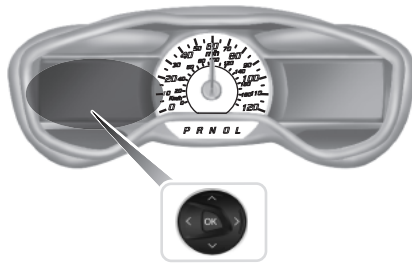
- Distance - The total distance travelled, and regen distance are displayed. Regen distance is the estimated range gained from energy recaptured through regenerative braking.
- Energy Used - The total kilowatt hours and average watt hours per unit of distance are displayed. The average watt hours per mi (km) will be shown in blue if less than (better than) the lifetime average watt hours per mi (km).
- Brake Score - The percentage of braking energy recaptured and returned to the high voltage battery through regenerative braking. The brake score will be shown in blue if greater than (better than) the lifetime brake score.

Lifetime Summary:

- Distance - The total regen distance, which is the estimated range gained from energy recaptured through regenerative braking.

- Energy Used - The total kilowatt hours.
- Brake Score - The average percentage of braking energy recaptured and returned to the high voltage battery through regenerative braking.

MESSAGE CENTER






- Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.
- Press the right arrow button to enter a sub-menu.
- Press the left arrow button to exit a menu.
- Press the OK button to choose and confirm a setting/messages.

The arrows in the upper left corner of the display indicate additional content available when lit.

Main menu

From the main menu bar on the left side of the information display, you can choose from the following categories:

-  Display Mode
-  Trip 1 & 2
-  Energy
-  Information
-  Settings

Scroll up/down to highlight one of the categories, then press the right arrow key or OK to enter into that category. Press the left arrow key as needed to exit back to the main menu.

Display Mode



Use the arrow buttons to choose between the following display options.

Display Mode					
Budget Text View	Options	Budget Text / Help			
Budget View	Options	Gauge Scale / Budget Text / Help			
Range View	Options	Surplus Graphic / Budget Text / Help			
MyView	Options	Gauge Scale	—	—	
		Budget Text	—	—	
		Change MyView	Budget text only	Blank	
			Range View	Budget View	
			Range + Surplus	Budget + AVG.	
			Accessory Power	Accessory Power	
			Trip 1	Trip 1	
			Trip 2	Trip 2	
			Energy History	Energy Coach	
			Energy Coach	—	
Help	—				

- Budget Text View: contains basic information to help you reach your next charging destination or to achieve your vehicle range estimate.
 Charge pt: is the distance remaining to the next charge point you identified using the Navigation system.
 Surplus: is the available range beyond your identified charge point (current Range Estimate shown on Battery Gauge minus Charge pt distance).

If you don't enter a charge point, you will see:

Budget: is set to the Range Estimate at the point of departure. This will count down with the odometer.

Status: is your performance against your Budget (current Range Estimate shown on Battery Gauge minus Budget distance). A positive Status indicates you are using less energy than typical and have extended your Range Estimate by the distance shown.

- **Budget view:** helps you manage your energy use.

Your current Energy Use is the white line that moves up and down in the Budget Gauge. A higher line means you are using more energy (lower is better). Your energy use includes input from the accelerator pedal as well as the accessories, such as Climate Control.

The Budget is shown by the blue cup shape around the Budget Gauge. As long as your current Energy Use is within the cup, you are staying within your budget. Your Budget represents the maximum energy usage you can maintain in order to achieve your vehicle range estimate, or reach your intended charge point. Driving for extended periods outside of the Budget Cup reduces your budget and could put you at risk of not reaching your intended charge point.

- **Range view:** shows your range relative to your charge point as well as performance to your budget.

A blue charge point icon means you have a Surplus. If an E appears to the left of an amber charge point icon, then you are projected to run out of charge prior to reaching your charge point.

Current performance to your budget is represented by the glow of the car icon: more Blue = better performance to budget, more Amber = worse.

The optional Surplus Graphic displays available range beyond your charge point.

If you didn't enter your charge point through the Navigation system, your budget will be set to the range estimate at the start of your trip. The gauge will show your estimated distance to E (empty) along with your current performance to budget. The optional Surplus Graphic is not available in this case.

- **MyView:** You can choose what to display in this view. Selecting Change MyView in the options menu allows you to scroll through two columns of content choices. The content you select is saved to the current driver's key as MyView.

Note: Trip data cannot be reset in MyView. See Trip 1 & 2 information below.

Trip 1 & 2



Use the arrow buttons to choose between the following.

Trip 1 & 2	Standard	Enhanced	Budget text
Trip distance	x	x	x
Elapsed trip time	x	x	x
XXX Wh/mi (km) – Energy used per unit of distance		x	
XX.X kWh –Energy used		x	
Budget Text			x
Total Odometer.	x	x	x
Press and hold OK to reset the currently displayed trip information.			

- Trip distance — shows the accumulated trip distance.
- Elapsed trip time — timer stops when the vehicle is turned off and restarts when the vehicle is restarted.
- XXX Wh/mi (km) — shows the average Energy (watt-hours) used per unit of distance for a given trip
- XX.X kWh — shows the total Energy (kilowatt-hours) used for a given trip.
- Budget Text — Shows the distance to your next charge point and the surplus distance available, or your budget and status if you didn't identify a charge point through the navigation system.
- Total Odometer — Displays the total distance the vehicle has traveled. This value can not be reset.

Energy

Use the arrow buttons to choose the desired energy display.

Energy		
Energy History	Options	Time intervals / Help
Energy Coach	Options	Help

- **Energy History:** This view from left to right starts with the Budget View gauge and adds historical Energy Use and Budget data. The data is represented as an average for time intervals of either 1, 2 or 6 minutes, with the leftmost interval being the most recent. Total time for the five intervals is shown at the bottom of the view. Interval time can be selected in the Options menu. Intervals shown in grey color are from the previous drive.
- **Energy Coach:** This view provides a comparison of your recent Acceleration, Braking and Cruising behavior to what is recommended for most efficient use of energy under present conditions. The horizontal bars fill from left to right with best efficiency (and Blue color) shown as at least half full. When the bars are less than half full, the color is Amber, suggesting that a change in behavior is needed to achieve better energy efficiency.

Information

In this mode, you can view different vehicle system information and perform a system check.

Warnings	
XX Warnings	Displays the number of warnings that need immediate attention in red. You can only view the warnings from the System Check menu. View them immediately by pressing OK and then OK again to enter system check. Use the up/down arrows to scroll through the warnings.

Tutorial	
Find Your Way	
Brake Coach	
Display Mode	
Trip 1 & 2	
Energy	
Surplus	
MyKey Info	
MyKeys (Number of MyKeys programmed)	
Admin Keys (Number of admin keys)	
MyKey Miles (km) (Distance traveled using a programmed MyKey)	
Driver Alert	
Displays the associated driver alert graphic.	
System Check	
All active warnings will display first if applicable. The system check menu may appear different based upon equipment options and current vehicle status. Use the up/down arrow buttons to scroll through the list.	

Settings



In this mode, you can configure different driver setting choices.

Note: Some items are optional and may not appear.

Driver Assist	
Traction Ctrl	On (default setting) / Off
Rear Park Aid	On (default on key cycle) / Off

Vehicle			
Lighting	Home Light	Manual or select time interval	
	Auto Light Rain	On / Off	
Remote Start	Climate Control (using this feature allows you to select different climate control modes when the vehicle is started using the remote start feature)	Heater – A/C	Auto / Last Settings
		Rear Defrost	Auto / Off
	Duration	5 / 10 /15 minutes	
	Quiet Start	On / Off	
	System	Enable / Disable	
Tire Mobility Kit	Expiration	Select number of years	
*MyKey			
Create MyKey	Hold OK to Create MyKey		
Traction Control	Always On / User Selectable		
Max Speed	Set to 80 MPH (130 km/h) / Off		
Speed Minder	45 mph (72 km/h), 55 mph (89 km/h), 65 mph (105 km/h), Off		
Volume Limiter	On / Off		
Clear MyKeys	Hold OK to Clear All MyKeys		

*Some MyKey items will only appear if a MyKey is set.

Display	
Language	Select the desired language
Units	Distance
	Temperature
	Select the desired units of measure
Brake Coach	On / Off
Regen Display	On / Off
Lifetime Summary	Energy use, Regen Miles, Brake Score, Hold OK to Reset

INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: Depending on the vehicle options equipped with your vehicle, not all of the messages will display or be available. Certain messages may be abbreviated or shortened depending upon which cluster type you have.



Press the OK button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display. Other messages will be removed automatically after a short time. Certain messages need to be confirmed before you can access the menus.

Some messages will be supplemented by a system specific symbol with a message indicator.

AdvanceTrac Message	Action / Description
Service AdvanceTrac	Displayed when the system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Alarm Message	Action / Description
To Stop Alarm, Start Vehicle	Displayed when unauthorized entry into the vehicle has occurred. Turn the ignition on to stop the alarm.

Instrument Cluster

Brake System Message	Action / Description
Brake Fluid Level LOW	Indicates the brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately.
Check Brake System	Displayed when the brake system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Park Brake Engaged	Displayed when the parking brake is set, the vehicle is in ready to drive and the vehicle is driven more than 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning stays on after the parking brake is released, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Charging and Electrical System Message	Action / Description
Elec system overvoltage Stop safely	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition. Contact your authorized dealer.
Battery low Check handbook	Displays to warn of a low 12-volt battery condition. Turn off all unneeded electrical accessories. Contact your authorized dealer.
Low Battery	Displays when the estimated range is 10 mi (16 km) or 15 mi (24 km) for MyKey. The vehicle needs to be charged soon.

Charging and Electrical System Message	Action / Description
Low Battery Reduce climate use for more range	Displays when the estimated range is 10 mi (16 km) or 15 mi (24 km) for MyKey and the climate system is in use. Turn off unneeded climate system operation to increase vehicle range.
Depleted Battery Stop safely now	Displays when the estimated range is 0 mi (0 km). Stop the vehicle in a safe place. The vehicle must be charged.
Reduce Climate Use for More Range	Displays when high climate usage may make it difficult to stay within your energy budget.
Unplug Prior to Starting Vehicle	Displays when attempting to start the vehicle while plugged in.
Is Vehicle Plugged-in?	Displays when confirmation is needed that the vehicle is unplugged before a start is allowed. You must make sure the vehicle is unplugged and respond to the message prompt before starting your vehicle.
Limited Performance Due to cold battery	Displays when vehicle performance is affected by cold battery temperatures.
Severely Limited Performance Due to cold battery	Displays when vehicle performance is severely affected by cold battery temperatures. Drive with caution. Keep vehicle plugged in when not in use to maintain proper battery temperature.

Charging and Electrical System Message	Action / Description
Limited Performance Due to hot battery	Displays when vehicle performance is affected by hot battery temperatures.
Severely Limited Performance Due to hot battery	Displays when vehicle performance is severely affected by hot battery temperatures. Drive with caution. Keep vehicle plugged in when not in use to maintain proper battery temperature.
Approaching Range Limit To return Home	Displays when you have not specified a charge point through the vehicle Mytouch system and vehicle range will soon be less than what is needed to return Home. Your Home address must be specified through the vehicle Mytouch system to enable this feature.
Stop Safely Now	Displays when the stop safely hazard warning lamp is illuminated. This indicates an electrical component fault/failure that will cause the vehicle to shut down or enter into limited operating mode.
It's Hot Outside... Plug Vehicle in When Not in Use	Displays when the ambient temperature is hot. Plug in the vehicle to cool the high voltage battery for optimum performance.
It's Cold Outside... Plug Vehicle in When Not in Use	Displays when the ambient temperature is cold. Plug in the vehicle to warm the high voltage battery for optimum performance.

Charging and Electrical System Message	Action / Description
Ready to Drive	Displays when the vehicle is ready to drive.
Ready to Drive Budget set for xx mi (km)	Displays when the vehicle is ready to drive and you have not specified your next charge point through your vehicle navigation system. Your budget is set for the current vehicle range estimate.
Budget Set for xx mi (km)	Displays when your budget is reset because you have reached your charge point destination, or you no longer have a charge point destination identified through your vehicle navigation system. Your budget is set for the current vehicle range estimate.
Doors Message	Action / Description
X Door Ajar	Displays when the door listed is not completely closed.
Liftgate Ajar	Displays when the luggage compartment is not completely closed.
Hill Start Assist Message	Action / Description
Hill start assist not available	Displays when hill start assist is not available. Contact your authorized dealer.

Keyless Vehicle / Immobilizer Message	Action / Description
Starting System Fault	This message is displayed when there is a problem with your vehicle's starting system. See your authorized dealer for service.
Steering malfunction Service now	Contact your authorized dealer.
Steering malfunction Stop safely	Stop the vehicle in a safe place. Contact your authorized dealer.
Key Inside Vehicle	Displays to remind you that the key is in the luggage compartment. Refer to <i>Push button start system</i> in the <i>Driving</i> chapter for more information.
Key Not Inside Car	Displays if the key is not detected by the system. Refer to <i>Push button start system</i> in the <i>Driving</i> chapter for more information.
No Key Detected	Displays if the key is not detected by the system. Refer to <i>Push button start system</i> in the <i>Driving</i> chapter for more information.
Accessory Power Active	Displayed when the vehicle is in the accessory ignition state.
Press Brake to Start	Displayed as a reminder to apply the brake as needed when starting.
Place Key in Backup Slot	Displayed as needed by the system for proper function.

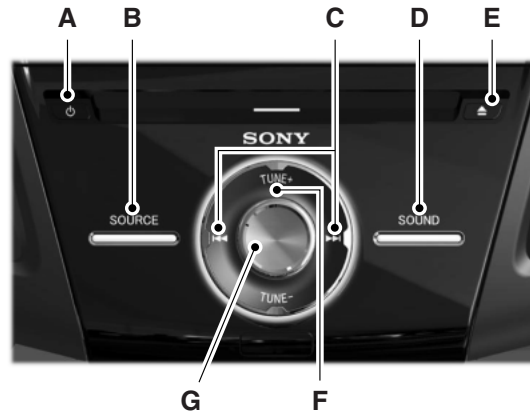
Lighting Message	Action / Description
Brake lamp Bulb fault	Displays when the brake lamp bulb has burned out. Contact your authorized dealer.
Dipped beam Bulb fault	Displays when the low beam headlamp bulb has burned out. Contact your authorized dealer.
Headlamp malfunction Service req'd	Displays when an electrical system problem occurs with the headlamp system. Contact your authorized dealer.
Maintenance Message	Action / Description
Brake fluid level low Service now	Indicates the brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. Refer to <i>Brake fluid</i> in the <i>Maintenance and Specifications</i> chapter. Contact your authorized dealer.
Brake system malfunction Stop safely	Displays when the brake system needs servicing. Stop the vehicle in a safe place. Contact your authorized dealer.
Washer fluid level low	Displays when the washer fluid is low and needs to be refilled. Refer to <i>Windshield washer fluid</i> in the <i>Maintenance and Specifications</i> chapter.
Motor Coolant Overtemperature	Displays when the motor electronics are overheating. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, turn off the vehicle and let it cool. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Maintenance Message	Action / Description
See Manual	Indicates a powertrain or high-voltage charge system fault has been detected. If the indicator stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Service Tire Mobility Kit	Displayed when the kit needs service. See your authorized dealer.
MyKey® Message	Action / Description
MyKey active Drive Safely	Displays when MyKey® is active.
Speed Limited to xx MPH/km/h	Displays when starting the vehicle and MyKey® is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on.
Near Vehicle Top Speed	Displays when a MyKey® is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on and the vehicle speed is approaching 80 mph (130 km/h).
Vehicle at Top Speed of MyKey Setting	Displays when a MyKey® is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on and the vehicle reaches 80 mph (130 km/h).
Check Speed Drive Safely	Displayed when a MyKey® is in use and the optional setting is on and the vehicle exceeds a preselected speed.
Buckle Up to Unmute Audio	Displays when a MyKey® is in use and Belt-Minder® is activated.
MyKey Park aid cannot be deactivated	Displays when a MyKey® is in use and park aid is activated.

Park Aid Message	Action / Description
Check Park Aid	Displayed when the transmission is in R (Reverse) and the park aid is disabled.
Rear Park Aid On Off	Displays the park aid status.
Power Steering Message	Action / Description
Service Power Steering	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. See your authorized dealer.
Service Power Steering Now	The power steering system has detected a condition within the power steering system that requires service immediately. See your authorized dealer.
Power Steering Assist Fault	The power steering system has disabled power steering assist due to a system error. See your authorized dealer.
Remote Start Message	Action / Description
Remote Start Active	Displayed when the remote start system is active.
Transmission Message	Action / Description
Transmission not in Park Select P	Displays as a reminder to shift into park.
Press brake pedal	Displays to request the operator to apply the brake as needed by the transmission.
To start press brake	Displays when starting the vehicle as a reminder to apply the brake.
Shift to Park	Displayed as a reminder to shift to park.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) Message	Action / Description
Low Tire Pressure	Displays when one or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure. Refer to <i>Inflating Your Tires</i> in the <i>Tires, Wheels and Loading</i> chapter.
Tire Pressure Monitor Fault	Displays when the tire pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer.
Tire Pressure Sensor Fault	Displays when a tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use. For more information on how the system operates under these conditions, refer to <i>Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)</i> in the <i>Tires, Wheels and Loading</i> chapter. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer.

AM/FM/SINGLE CD SONY® AUDIO SYSTEM



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that you use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: Most of the audio features are controlled through the MyFord Touch® system. See the *MyFord Touch*® chapter for more information.

A. **Power:** Press the power control to turn the system on and off.

B. **SOURCE:** Access different audio modes such as AM, FM and A/V Input.

C. **Seek/Reverse/Fast Forward:**

- In radio mode, select a frequency band and press one of the seek buttons. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction.
- In SIRIUS mode, select the previous or next channel. If a specific category is selected, (Jazz, Rock, News, etc.), use the seek buttons find to the previous or next channel in the selected category.
- In CD mode, select the previous or next track.

D. **SOUND:** Allows you to adjust the sound settings (Treble, Bass, Midrange, Fade and Balance).

E. **Eject:** Press the eject control to eject the CD.

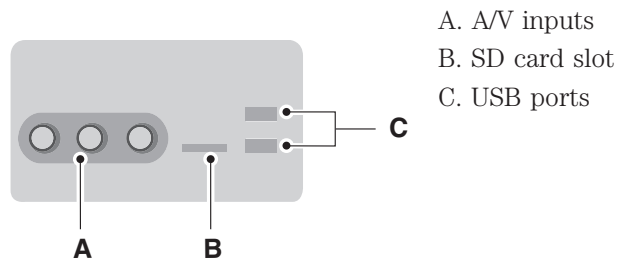
F. **TUNE +/TUNE - :**

- In radio mode, you can search the frequency band in individual increments.
- In SIRIUS mode, you can find the next or previous available SIRIUS satellite station.

G. **Volume:** Turn to adjust the volume.

MEDIA HUB (IF EQUIPPED)

The media hub is located in the center console and has the following features:



For more information, see the *MyFord Touch* chapter.

GENERAL AUDIO INFORMATION

Radio Frequencies

AM and FM frequencies are established by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Canadian Radio and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC). Those frequencies are:

AM: 530, 540–1700, 1710 kHz

FM: 87.9–107.7, 107.9 MHz

Radio Reception Factors

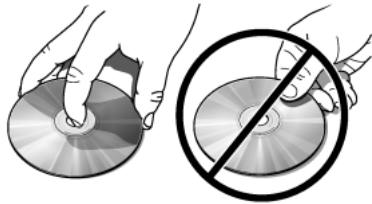
There are four factors that can affect radio reception:

- Distance/strength: The further you travel from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
- Terrain: Hills, mountains, tall buildings, power lines, electric fences, traffic lights and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.

- Station overload: When you pass a broadcast tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and play while the weak station frequency is displayed.
- Electric motor noise: AM reception is affected by static and tones created by the electric motor in your plug-in/hybrid vehicle. These noises are inherent to the technology used on this vehicle and cannot be mitigated by your Ford dealer. The noise becomes more or less significant depending upon the other factors listed here for reception.

CD/CD Player Information

Do:



- Handle discs by their edges only. (Never touch the playing surface).
- Inspect discs before playing.
- Clean only with an approved CD cleaner.



- Wipe discs from the center out.

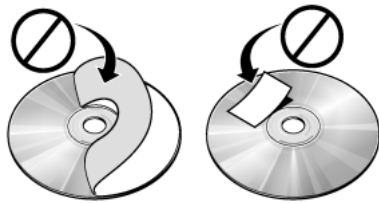
Don't:

- Expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods of time.
- Clean using a circular motion.

CD units are designed to play commercially pressed 4.75 in (12 cm) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.



Do not use any irregular shaped CDs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.



CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels should not be inserted into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. It is recommended that homemade CDs be identified with permanent felt tip marker rather

than adhesive labels. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact your authorized dealer for further information.

Audio System Warranty and Service

Refer to the *Warranty Guide/Customer Information Guide* for audio system warranty information. If service is necessary, see your dealer or qualified technician.

Satellite Radio Information (If Equipped)

Satellite Radio Channels

SIRIUS® broadcasts a variety of music, news, sports, weather, traffic and entertainment satellite radio channels. For more information and a complete list of SIRIUS® satellite radio channels, visit www.sirius.com in the United States, www.siriuscanada.ca in Canada, or call SIRIUS® at 1-888-539-7474.

Satellite Radio Reception Factors

To receive the satellite signal, your vehicle has been equipped with a satellite radio antenna located on the roof of your vehicle. The vehicle roof provides the best location for an unobstructed, open view of the sky, a requirement of a satellite radio system. Like AM/FM, there are several factors that can affect satellite radio reception performance:

- **Antenna obstructions:** For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other material as far away from the antenna as possible.

- Terrain: Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
- Station overload: When you pass a ground based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in an audio mute.

Unlike AM/FM audible static, you will hear an audio mute when there is satellite radio signal interference. Your radio display may display NO SIGNAL to indicate the interference.

SIRIUS® Satellite Radio Service

Note: SIRIUS® reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming including canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for any such programming changes.

SIRIUS® satellite radio is a subscription based satellite radio service that broadcasts music, sports, news and entertainment programming. A service fee is required in order to receive SIRIUS® service. Vehicles that are equipped with a factory installed SIRIUS® satellite radio system include hardware and a limited subscription term, which begins on the date of sale or lease of the vehicle.

For information on extended subscription terms, the online media player and other SIRIUS® features, please contact SIRIUS® at 1-888-539-7474.

Satellite Radio Electronic Serial Number (ESN)

This 12-digit Satellite Serial Number is needed to activate, modify or track your satellite radio account. You will need this number when communicating with SIRIUS®. While in satellite radio mode, you can view this number on the radio display by pressing the Menu icon > SIRIUS > Show ESN.

Troubleshooting

Radio Display	Condition	Action Required
ACQUIRING	Radio requires more than two seconds to produce audio for the selected channel.	No action required. This message should disappear shortly.
SAT FAULT	Internal module or system failure present.	If this message does not clear within a short period of time, or with an ignition key cycle, your receiver may have a fault. See your authorized dealer for service.
INVALID CHNL	Channel no longer available.	This previously available channel is no longer available. Tune to another channel. If the channel was one of your presets, you may choose another channel for that preset button.
UNSUBSCRIBED	Subscription not available for this channel.	Contact SIRIUS® at 1-888-539-7474 to subscribe to the channel or tune to another channel.
NO TEXT	Artist information not available.	Artist information not available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

Radio Display	Condition	Action Required
NO TEXT	Song title information not available.	Song title information not available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.
NO TEXT	Category information not available.	Category information not available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.
NO SIGNAL	Loss of signal from the SIRIUS® satellite or SIRIUS® tower to the vehicle antenna.	You are in a location that is blocking the SIRIUS® signal (i.e., tunnel, under an overpass, dense foliage, etc). The system is working properly. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.
UPDATING	Update of channel programming in progress.	No action required. The process may take up to three minutes.
CALL SIRIUS® 1-888-539-7474	Satellite service has been deactivated by SIRIUS® satellite radio.	Call SIRIUS® at 1-888-539-7474 to re-activate or resolve subscription issues.

INTRODUCTION

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take their focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: Some features are not available while the vehicle is moving.

Note: Your system is equipped with a feature that allows you to access and control audio features for 30 minutes after the ignition has been turned off (as long as no doors are opened).

This system uses a four-corner strategy to provide quick access to vehicle features and settings. The comprehensive touchscreen provides easy interaction with your cellular phone, multimedia, climate control and navigation system. The corners display any active modes within those menus, such as your phone being connected or the climate temperature.

**SETTINGS**

Press to select any of the following:

- Clock
- Display
- Sound
- Vehicle
- Settings
- Help

**INFORMATION**

Press to select any of the following:

- SYNC® Services
- SIRIUS® Travel Link™
- Alerts
- Calendar
- SYNC Apps

If the icon is yellow, see *Alerts* in the *Information* section of this chapter.

PHONE

Press to select any of the following:

- Making and Receiving Calls
- Quick Dial
- Phonebook
- Call History
- Text Messaging
- Settings

NAVIGATION

Press to select any of the following:

- My Home
- Favorites
- Previous Destinations
- Point of Interest
- Emergency
- Street Address
- Intersection
- City Center
- Map
- Previous Starting Point
- Latitude/Longitude
- Freeway Entrance/Exit

ENTERTAINMENT

Press to select any of the following:

- AM
- FM
- SIRIUS
- CD
- USB
- BT Stereo
- SD Card
- A/V In

CLIMATE

Press to select any of the following:

- Driver Settings
- Recirculated Air
- Auto
- Dual

- Passenger Settings
- A/C
- Defrost



Press to access your home screen. Depending on your vehicle's option package and software, your screens may vary in appearance from the screens shown in this section. Your features may also be limited depending on your market. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.

Using the Touch-sensitive Controls on Your System

Your vehicle's centerstack has touch-sensitive switches for your infotainment and climate control systems. To turn a feature on and off, just touch the graphic with your finger. To get the best performance from the touch-sensitive controls:

- Do not press hard on the controls. They are sensitive to light touch.
- Use your bare finger to touch the center of a touch-control graphic. Touching off-center of the graphic may cause a nearby control to turn on or off.
- Make sure your hands are clean and dry.
- Since the touchscreen operates based on the touch of a finger, you may have trouble using it if you are wearing gloves.
- Metal and other conductive material should be kept away from the surface of the touchscreen as this may cause electronic interference (i.e., control activation).

Depending on your vehicle and option package, you may also have these controls on your bezel:

- Power: Turn the media (or climate features) on or off.
- VOL: Increase or decrease the volume.
- Fan: Increase or decrease the fan speed.
- Seek and Tune buttons: Use as you normally would in media modes.
- Eject: Eject a CD.
- SOURCE: Touch the word repeatedly to see all available media modes. The screen does not change, but you see the media changes in the lower left status bar.
- SOUND: Touch the word to access the Sound menu where you can make adjustments to settings, such as: Bass, Midrange, Treble, Balance and Fade, THX Deep Note Demo (if equipped), DSP (if equipped), Occupancy Mode (if equipped), and Speed Compensated Volume settings.
- Hazard flasher: Press the button to turn the hazard flashers on or off.

Cleaning the Touchscreen Display

Clean the display with a clean, soft cloth, such as one used for cleaning glasses. If dirt or finger prints are still visible, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth. Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the display. Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the display.

Support

The SYNC support team is available to help you with any questions you aren't able to answer on your own.

Monday-Saturday, 8:30 am-8pm EST

In the United States, call: 1-888-270-1055

In Canada, call: 1-800-565-3673

Times are subject to change due to holidays.

SYNC Owner Account

Why do I need a SYNC owner account?

- Required to activate Vehicle Health Report and to view the reports online.
- Required to activate the subscription-based SYNC Services and to personalize your Saved Points and Favorites.
- Essential for keeping up with the latest software downloads available for SYNC.
- Access to customer support for any questions you may have.

Safety Information



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

When using SYNC, do not:

- Operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Carefully place cords and cables where they cannot be stepped on or interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.

- Leave playing devices in the vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. See your device's user guide for further information.
- Attempt to service or repair the system. See your authorized dealer.

Speed-restricted Features

Some features of this system may be too difficult to use while the vehicle is in motion so they're restricted from being modified unless the vehicle is not moving. Some examples of these are listed below:

- Screens that are too crowded with information, such as Point of Interest (POI) reviews and ratings, SIRIUS® Travel Link™ sports scores, movie times, ski conditions, etc.
- Any action that requires using a keyboard, such as entering a navigation destination or editing information
- All lists are limited so the user can view fewer entries (e.g. phone contacts, recent phone call entries)

Listed below are more specific features that can only be modified while the vehicle is not moving:

Restricted Features	
Cellular Phone	Pairing a Bluetooth phone
	Adding phonebook contacts or uploading phonebook contacts (from a USB)
	Lists entries are limited for phone contacts and recent phone call entries
System Functionality	Editing the keypad code
	Enabling Valet Mode
	Editing settings while the rear view camera or Active Park Assist are active
Wi-Fi/Wireless	Editing wireless settings
	Editing the list of wireless networks
Videos/Photos/Graphics	Playing video
	Editing the screen's wallpaper or adding new wallpaper
Text Messages	Composing text messages
	Viewing received text messages
	Editing preset text messages

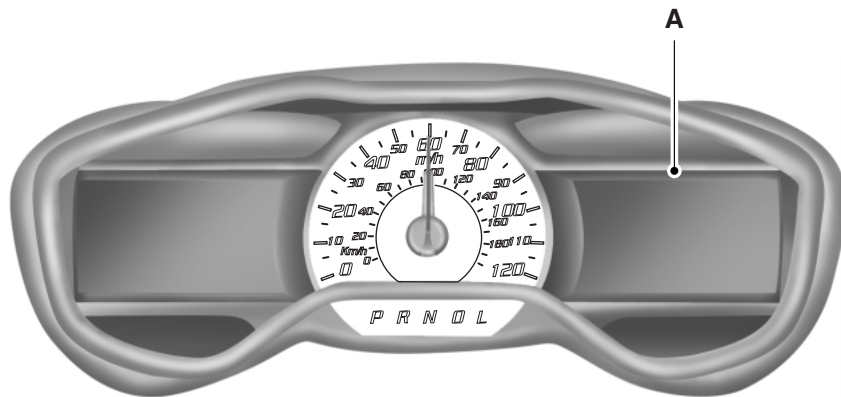
Restricted Features	
Navigation	Using the keyboard to enter a destination
	Demo navigation route
	Adding/Editing Address Book entries or Avoid Areas

Privacy Information

When a cellular phone is connected to SYNC, the system creates a profile within your vehicle that is linked to that cellular phone. This profile is created in order to offer you more cellular features and to operate more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your cellular phone book, text messages (read and unread), and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system. In addition, if you connect a media device, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cellular profile, media device index, and development log remains in the vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in the vehicle when the cellular phone or media player is connected. If you no longer plan to use the system or the vehicle, we recommend you perform a Master Reset to erase all stored information.

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to the vehicle's SYNC module. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access the system data for any purpose other than as described absent consent, a court order, or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities, or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada. For further privacy information, see the sections on 911 Assist® (if equipped), Vehicle Health Report (if equipped), and Traffic, Directions and Information (if equipped).

**ACCESSING AND ADJUSTING MODES THROUGH YOUR
INFOTAINMENT DISPLAY**

The infotainment display (A) is located on the right side of your instrument cluster. Your steering wheel controls can be used to view and make minor adjustments to active modes without taking your hands off the wheel. For example:

- In entertainment mode, you can view what is now playing, change the audio source, select presets and make some adjustments.
- In phone mode, you can accept or reject an incoming call.
- In navigation mode (if equipped), you can view the current route or activate a route.
- In surplus mode, surplus (or status) is represented by either butterflies or a gauge. The number of butterflies matches the current surplus or status distance up to a maximum of sixteen butterflies. The more efficiently you drive, the more butterflies (or higher status) display, and vice versa. See *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for more information.

When you enter or turn off the vehicle, you have the opportunity to view charging status, charge start and end times as well as the charging mode. You can also switch your charging mode between Value Charge and Charge Now. See *Convenience charging with MyFord mobile* in the *High Voltage Battery* chapter.



Use the OK and arrow buttons on the right side of your steering wheel to scroll through the available modes:



Entertainment



Phone



Navigation



Surplus

You can make selections from the menu by using the OK button. The selection menu expands and you are allowed different options.

- Press the up and down arrows to scroll through the modes.
- Press the right arrow to enter the mode.
- Press the left or right arrows to make adjustments within the chosen mode.
- Press OK to confirm your selection.

Note: If your vehicle is not equipped with navigation, Compass appears in the display instead of Navigation. If you press the right arrow to go into the Compass menu, you can see the compass graphic. The compass displays the direction in which the vehicle is traveling, not “true” direction (i.e., if the vehicle is traveling west, the middle of the compass graphic displays west; north displays to the left of west though its “true” direction is to the right of west.)

USING VOICE RECOGNITION

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and focus on what is in front of you. The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction (voice settings).

The system also asks short questions (confirmation prompts) when it is not sure of your request or when there are multiple possible responses to your request.

When using voice commands, words and icons may also appear in the lower left status bar indicating the status of the voice session (i.e., , listening, success, failed, paused or try again).

How to Use Voice Commands with Your System



Press the voice icon; after the tone, speak your command clearly.

These commands can be said at any time.
“Cancel”
“Exit”
“Go back”
“List of commands”
“Main menu”
“Next page”
“Previous page”
“What can I say?”
“Help”

What Can I Say

To access the available voice commands for the current session, do one of the following:

- During a voice session, press the help icon (?) in the lower left status bar of the screen, OR
- Say “What can I say?” for an on-screen listing of the possible voice commands associated with your current voice session, OR
- Press the voice icon; after the tone, say “Help” for an audible list of possible voice commands.

To Access a List of Available Commands

- Press the Settings icon > Help > Voice Command List, OR
- Press the voice icon; after the tone, speak your command clearly:

Voice Command List
“Audio list of commands”
“Bluetooth audio list of commands”
“Browse list of commands”
“CD list of commands”
“Climate control list of commands”
“List of commands”
“Navigation list of commands” *
“Phone list of commands”
“Radio list of commands”
“SD card list of commands”
“Sirius satellite list of commands” *
“Travel link list of commands” *
“USB list of commands”
“Voice instructions list of commands”
“Voice settings list of commands”
“Help”

* If equipped.

Helpful Hints

- Make sure the interior of the vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken commands.
- After pressing the voice icon, wait until after the tone sounds and Listening appears before saying a command. Any command spoken prior to this does not register with the system.
- Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.
- At any time you can interrupt the system while it is speaking by pressing the voice icon.

Voice Settings

Voice settings allow you to customize the level of system interaction, help and feedback. The system defaults to standard interaction which

uses candidate lists and confirmation prompts as these provide the highest level of guidance and feedback.

Interaction Mode: Novice mode provides more detailed interaction and guidance while the advanced mode has less audible interaction and more tone prompts.

Confirmation Prompts: Confirmation prompts are short questions the system asks when it is not sure of your request or when there are multiple possible responses to your request. If turned off, the system simply makes a best guess as to what you requested and you may still occasionally be asked to confirm settings.

Phone/Media Candidate Lists: Candidate lists are a list of possible results from your voice commands. The system creates these lists when it has the same confidence level of several options based on your voice command.

To access these settings using the touchscreen:

1. Press the Settings icon > Settings > Voice Control.
2. Select from:
 - Interaction Mode
 - Confirmation Prompts
 - Media Candidate Lists
 - Phone Candidate Lists
 - Voice Control Volume

To access these settings using voice commands:



Press the voice icon; after the tone sounds, the system says “Please say a command”. Another tone sounds to let you know the system is listening.

Using Voice Commands with the Touchscreen Options

Your voice system has a dual mode feature which allows you to switch between using voice commands and making on-screen selections. This is most often available when using navigation.

On-screen buttons are outlined in blue to indicate the selections that are part of the dual mode feature. For example, if while you are in a voice session rather than saying the command “Enter Street Name” to change the field, you can press “Street” and the voice session does not end. Instead, the voice system changes to the Street field and asks you to say the street name. The buttons not outlined in blue cannot be used as voice commands; if they are touched during a voice session, the voice session is canceled. For example:

From the Navigation home screen, you can choose from the following:

- My Home

- Favorites
- Previous Destinations
- Point of Interest (POI)
- Emergency
- Street Address
- Intersection
- Cancel Route

Some of the voice commands that are available while viewing this screen are:

“DESTINATION”
“Destination my home”
“Destination street address”
“Destination favorites”
“Destination previous destinations”
“Destination POI”
“Destination intersection”
“Destination emergency”

If you choose Street Address from the navigation screen, you can choose from the following:

- Number
- City
- Street Name
- State/Prov

Some of the voice commands that are available while viewing this screen are:

“STREET ADDRESS”
“Enter house number”
“Change house number”
“Enter street name”
“Change street name”
“Enter city”
“Change city”
“Enter state”
“Change state”

If you choose Points of Interest from the navigation screen, you can choose from the following:

- Search Area
- Search By Name
- Fuel Station
- ATM
- All Restaurants
- Accommodations
- Parking

Some of the voice commands that are available while viewing this screen are:

“POINTS OF INTEREST” or “POI”
“Destination <POI category name>”
“Search by name”
“Search by category”
“Change search area”

Note: These are just a sample of the voice commands available within the Points of Interest section; the categories themselves are also technically voice commands.

If you choose Intersection from the navigation screen, you can choose from the following:

- 1st Street
- 2nd Street
- City
- State/Prov

Some of the voice commands that are available while viewing this screen are:

“INTERSECTION”
“Enter first street name”
“Change first street name”
“Enter second street name”
“Change second street name”
“Enter city”
“Change city”
“Enter state”
“Change state”

The dual mode feature is also available when the voice system displays a list of items to pick from during a voice session, where you would be able to touch the line item or say “Line 2”. If a command is not understood or there are multiple options, the system returns a list for you to choose from.

ENTERTAINMENT

Your system offers many media options. You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands.

Browsing Device Content

When listening to any type of audio, you can browse through other devices without having to change sources. For example, if you are currently listening to the radio, you can browse all the artists that are stored on your USB device.



Press the voice icon on the steering wheel. When prompted, you can say:

“BROWSE” within Devices
“Browse” [*]
“Browse <league> games” ^{**}
“Browse <Sirius category> channels” ^{**}
“Browse CD track list”
“Browse Sirius channel guide” ^{**}
“Browse SD card”
“Browse USB”
“Help”

^{*}If you have said “Browse”, you can then say any commands in the following chart.

^{**}If equipped with SIRIUS® satellite radio.

“BROWSE”
“<League> games”*
”<Sirius category> channels”*
“CD track list”
“SD card”
“Sirius channel guide”*
“USB”
“Help”

*If equipped with SIRIUS® satellite radio.

For a complete list of “Browse” voice commands, see *USB and SD card voice commands* and *Bluetooth audio voice commands* in the following sections.

AM/FM Radio



Press the lower left corner of the touchscreen and then select the AM or FM tab.

To change between AM and FM presets, just touch the AM or FM tab.

When you select:	You can:
Presets	Save a station by pressing and holding one of the memory preset areas. There is a brief mute while the station is being saved, then sound returns when it's done.
HD Radio	Turn the feature on. This enables you to receive radio broadcasts digitally (where available), providing free, crystal clear sound. See <i>HD Radio information</i> later in this chapter.
Scan	Go to the next strong AM or FM radio station.

When you select:	You can:
Options	Sound Settings allows you to adjust Bass, Midrange, Treble, Balance and Fade, THX Deep Note Demo (if equipped), DSP (if equipped), Occupancy Mode (if equipped), and Speed Compensated Volume settings.
	Set PTY for Seek/Scan allows you to select a category of music you would like to search for and then choose to either seek or scan for the stations.
	RDS Text Display allows you to always view the information broadcast by FM stations by selecting On.
	Auto Presets (AST) allows you to have the system automatically store the six strongest stations in your current location.
	TAG Button (if available) allows you to tag a song to download later. When you select On, TAG appears on-screen when HD radio is active. You can press TAG to save the information of the song that is playing. When you plug in your portable music player, the information is transferred (if supported by your device). When you are connected to iTunes®, the tags appear to remind you of the songs you'd like to download. See <i>HD Radio information</i> later in this chapter.
Direct Tune	Enter the desired station number when prompted. Press Enter.

HD Radio™ Information (If Available)

Note: HD Radio broadcasts are not available in all markets.

HD Radio technology is the digital evolution of analog AM/FM radio. Your system has a special receiver which allows it to receive digital broadcasts (where available) in addition to the analog broadcasts it already receives. Digital broadcasts provide a better sound quality than analog broadcasts with free, crystal clear audio and no static or distortion. For more information, and a guide to available stations and programming, please visit www.hdradio.com.

When this feature is enabled and you are tuned to a station broadcasting HD Radio technology, you may notice the following indicators on your screen:



HD) logo blinks when a digital station is being acquired and is solid when digital audio is playing. When this logo is available, you may also see Title and Artist fields on-screen.

Multicast indicator appears in FM mode (only) if the current station is broadcasting multiple digital broadcasts. The numbers that are highlighted signify available digital channels where new or different content is available. HD1 signifies the main programming status and is available in analog and digital broadcasts. Any additional multicast stations (HD2 through HD7) are only broadcast digitally.

TAG allows you to save a song to download later. When you are on an acquired HD Radio station, the TAG button is available (provided the feature has been turned on). To use the tag feature:

1. Press AM or FM > Options > TAG Button > On.
2. When you hear a song you like, touch TAG.
3. The system automatically saves the song's information and, if supported, transfers it to your portable music player when it is connected to the system. If your music player is connected at the time, the system automatically transfers the tag to your player and a pop-up confirms the transfer.
4. When you access iTunes® with your portable music player, the tags appear to you to be reminded of the song. The system allows you to tag up to approximately 100 songs. For a list of devices that support tagging, see www.SYNMyRide.com, www.SYNMyRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca.

When HD Radio broadcasts are active, you can access the following functions:

When you select:	You can:
Scan	Hear a brief sampling of all available stations. This feature still works when HD Radio reception is activated, although it does not scan for HD2 through HD7 channels. You may see the HD logo appear if the station has a digital broadcast.
To save a multicast station as a preset	When the channel is active on-screen, press and hold a memory preset slot until the sound returns. There is a brief mute, then the sound returns signifying it was saved. When recalling an HD2 or HD3 memory preset, there is a mute before the digital audio is played as the system must once again acquire the digital signal. As with any saved radio station, you cannot access the saved station if your vehicle is outside the station's reception area.

HD Radio Reception and Station Troubleshooting

Potential Reception Issues	
Reception area	<p>If you are listening to a multicast station and you are on the fringe of the reception area, the station may mute due to weak signal strength.</p> <p>If you are listening to HD1, the system switches back to the analog broadcast until the digital broadcast is available again.</p> <p>However, if you are listening to any of the possible HD2 through HD7 multicast channels, the station mutes and stay muted unless it is able to connect to the digital signal again.</p>
Station blending	<p>When a station is first received (aside from HD2 through HD7 multicast stations), the system first plays the station in the analog version and then, if receiver verifies the station is an HD Radio station, it shifts to the digital version. Depending on the station quality, you may hear a slight sound change when the station changes from analog to digital. This shift from analog to digital sound or digital back to analog, is known as “blending”.</p>

In order to provide the best possible experience, a contact form has been developed to report any station issues found while listening to a station broadcasting with HD Radio technology. Every station is independently owned and operated. These stations are responsible for ensuring all audio streams and data fields are accurate. See the following chart for potential station issues.

Potential Station Issues		
Issue	Cause	Action
Echo, stutter, skip or repeat in audio. Increase or decrease in audio volume.	Poor time-alignment by the radio broadcaster.	None. This is a broadcast issue.
Sound fading or blending in and out.	The radio is shifting between analog and digital audio.	None. This is a reception issue that may clear up as you continue to drive.
Audio mute delay when selecting HD2 or HD3, multicast preset or direct tune.	The digital multicast is not available until the HD Radio broadcast is decoded. Once decoded, the audio is available.	None. This is normal behavior. Wait until the audio is available.
Cannot access HD2 or HD3 multicast channel when recalling a preset or from a direct tune.	The previously stored multicast preset or direct tune is not available in your current reception area.	None. The station is not available in your current location.
Text information does not match currently playing audio.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form at website listed below.*
No text information shown for currently selected frequency.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form at website listed below.*
HD2 through HD7 stations not found when Scan is pressed.	Pressing Scan disables HD2 through HD7 channel search.	None. This is normal behavior.

*http://www.ibequity.com/automotive/report_radio_station_experiences
 HD Radio™ Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corp. U.S. and foreign patents. HD Radio™ and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp. Ford Motor Company and iBiquity Digital Corp. are not responsible for the content sent using HD Radio technology. Content may be changed, added or deleted at any time at the station owner's discretion.

Radio Voice Commands

If you are listening to the radio, press the voice button on the steering wheel control. When prompted, say any of the commands in the following chart.

If you are not listening to the radio, press the voice button and, after the tone, say “Radio”, then any of the commands in the following chart.

“RADIO”	
“<87.9–107.9>”	“FM autosest preset <#>”
“<87.9–107.9> HD” ¹	“FM preset <#>”
“<530–1710>”	“FM1”
“AM”	“FM 1 preset <#>”
“AM <530–1710>”	“FM2”
“AM autosest”	“FM 2 preset <#>”
“AM autosest preset <#>”	“HD <#>” ¹
“AM preset <#>”	“Preset <#>”
“Browse” ²	“Radio off”
“FM”	“Radio on”
“FM <87.9–107.9>”	“Set PTY”
“FM <87.9–107.9> HD <#>” ¹	“Tune” ³
“FM autosest”	“Help”

¹If available.

²If you have said, “Browse”, see *Browsing device content* earlier in this section.

³If you have said, “Tune”, see the following “Tune” chart.

“TUNE”	
“<87.9–107.9>”	“FM autosest”
“<87.9–107.9> HD <#>” [*]	“FM autosest preset <#>”
“<530–1710>”	“FM preset <#>”
“AM”	“FM1”
“AM <530–1710>”	“FM 1 preset <#>”
“AM autosest”	“FM2”
“AM autosest preset <#>”	“FM 2 preset <#>”
“AM preset <#>”	“HD <#>” [*]
“FM”	“Preset <#>”

"TUNE"	
"FM <87.9-107.9>"	"Help"
"FM <87.9-107.9> HD <#>"*	

*If available.

SIRIUS® Satellite Radio (If Activated)



Press the lower left corner of the touchscreen, then select the SIRIUS tab.

When you select:	You can:
Presets	Save a station by pressing and holding one of the memory preset areas. There is a brief mute while the station is being saved, then sound returns when it's done.
ALERT	Save the current song, artist, or team as a favorite. The system alerts you when it plays again on any SIRIUS channel.
Replay	<p>Replay audio on the current channel. You can replay approximately 45 minutes of audio as long as you have remained tuned to the current station. If you change stations, the previous audio is erased.</p> <p>While in replay mode:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press and release the seek buttons to hear the previous or next song. 2. Press and hold the seek buttons to advance to reverse or fast forward in the current track. 3. Press play or pause to play or pause the audio. 4. Press Replay again to return to live audio if you had been using the replay feature to replay audio.
Scan	Hear a brief sampling of channels.

When you select:	You can:
Options	Sound Settings allows you to adjust Bass, Midrange, Treble, Balance and Fade, THX Deep note demo (if equipped), DSP (if equipped), Occupancy mode (if equipped), and Speed compensated volume settings.
	Set Category for Seek/Scan allows you to select the desired category (Rock, Country, etc.) and then use Seek or Scan to initiate a search for those channels.
	Parental Lockout allows you to lock and unlock channels, change or reset your PIN or unlock all channels. To use this feature you need your initial PIN which is 1234.
	Artist/Title/Team Alerts allows you to select Artists, Titles and Teams that you would like the system to alert you to when they are playing on other channels. Press Edit Alerts to delete or turn off alerts. You can also set all alerts to on or off. When an alert appears on the screen, you can choose to Tune to the channel, to Cancel the alert or to Disable Alerts. If you are listening to a sporting event, you can save your favorite teams so that the system can alert you when they are playing on a satellite radio channel. Note: SIRIUS does not support the Alert feature on all channels. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for Alert feature variation.
	Electronic Serial Number (ESN) is required when communicating with SIRIUS about your account.

When you select:	You can:
Direct Tune	Enter the desired satellite channel number using the on-screen keypad.
Browse	View a list of all available stations. Scroll and select the desired station. You can also lock or skip unwanted channels or view the song/artist on other stations.

Satellite Radio Voice Commands



If you are listening to SIRIUS satellite radio, press the voice button on the steering wheel control. When prompted, say any of the commands in the following chart.

If you are not listening to SIRIUS satellite radio, press the voice button and, after the tone, say “Sirius”, then any of the commands in the following chart.

“SIRIUS”	
“<0-233>”	“SAT 3”
“<Channel name>”	“SAT 3 preset <#>”
“Preset <#>”	“SAT preset <#>”
“SAT”	“Sirius off”
“SAT 1”	“Sirius on”
“SAT 1 preset <#>”	“Sports game”*
“SAT 2”	“Tune”**
“SAT 2 preset <#>”	“Help”

*If you have said, “Sports game”, see the following “Sports game” chart.

**If you have said, “Tune”, see the following “Tune” chart.

“SPORTS GAME”
“Tune to the <college name> game”
“Tune to the <team city> game”
“Tune to the <team city> <team name> game”
“Tune to the <team name> game”
“Help”

“TUNE”
“<0-233>”
“<Channel name>”
“Preset <#>”
“SAT”
“SAT 1”
“SAT 1 preset <#>”
“SAT 2”
“SAT 2 preset <#>”
“SAT 3”
“SAT 3 preset <#>”
“Help”

SIRIUS Satellite Radio Information

Note: SIRIUS reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming including canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for any such programming changes.



SIRIUS satellite radio is a subscription-based satellite radio service that broadcasts a variety of music, sports, news, weather, traffic and entertainment programming.

Your factory-installed SIRIUS satellite radio system includes

hardware and a limited subscription term which begins on the date of sale or lease of the vehicle. See your authorized dealer for availability.

For more information on extended subscription terms (a service fee is required), the online media player and a complete list of SIRIUS satellite radio channels, and other features, please visit www.siriusxm.com in the United States, www.sirius.ca in Canada, or call SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474.

Satellite radio electronic serial number (ESN): You need your ESN to activate, modify or track your satellite radio account. The ESN is found on the System Information Screen (SR ESN:XXXXXXXXXXXX). To access your ESN, press the bottom left corner of the touchscreen, then SIRIUS > Options.

Potential Satellite Radio Reception Issues	
Antenna obstructions	For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other material as far away from the antenna as possible.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
Station overload	When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and the audio system may mute.
Satellite radio signal interference	Your display may show ACQUIRING . . . to indicate the interference and the audio system may mute.

SIRIUS Troubleshooting Tips		
Radio Display	Condition	Possible Action
Acquiring...	Radio requires more than two seconds to produce audio for the selected channel.	None. This message should disappear shortly.
Sat Fault/SIRIUS system failure .	Internal module or system failure present.	If this message does not clear shortly, or with an ignition key cycle, your receiver may have a fault. See your authorized dealer for service.
Invalid Channel.	Channel no longer available.	Tune to another channel or choose another preset.

SIRIUS Troubleshooting Tips		
Radio Display	Condition	Possible Action
Unsubscribed Channel.	Subscription not available for this channel.	Contact SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474 to subscribe to the channel, or tune to another channel.
No Signal.	Loss of signal from the SIRIUS satellite or SIRIUS tower to the vehicle antenna.	The signal is currently being blocked. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.
Updating.	Update of channel programming in progress.	None. The process may take up to three minutes.
Call SIRIUS 1-888-539-7474.	Satellite service has been deactivated by SIRIUS Satellite Radio.	Call SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474 to reactivate or resolve subscription issues.
No Channels Available.	All the channels in the selected category are locked or skipped.	Unlock or unskip the channels using the channel guide.
Subscription Updated.	SIRIUS has updated the channels available for your vehicle.	None.

CD

Press the lower left corner of the touchscreen, then select the CD tab.

When you select:	You can:
Repeat	Choose to repeat the currently playing track, all tracks on the disc or turn the feature off if already on.
Shuffle	Play the tracks or entire albums in random order, or turn the feature off if already on.
Scan	Hear a brief sampling of all available tracks.
More Info	See disc information.
Options	Sound: Adjust Bass, Treble, Midrange, Balance and Fade, THX Deep Note Demo (if equipped), DSP (if equipped), Occupancy Mode (if equipped), and Speed Compensated Volume settings.
	Compression: Turn the compression feature on and off.
Browse	Look through all available audio sources.

You can also advance and reverse the current track or current folder (if applicable).

CD Voice Commands



If you are listening to a CD, press the voice button on the steering wheel control. When prompted, say any of the commands in the following chart.

If you are not listening to a CD, press the voice button and, after the tone, say “CD”, then any of the commands in the following chart.

“CD”	
“Pause”	“Repeat off”
“Play”	“Repeat track”
“Play next track”	“Shuffle”
“Play previous track”	“Shuffle CD”*
“Play track <1-512>”	“Shuffle folder”*
“Repeat”	“Shuffle off”
“Repeat folder”*	“Help”

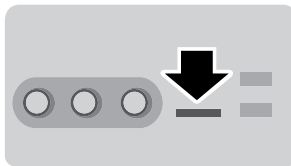
*WMA or MP3 only

SD Card Slot and USB Port

SD Card Slot

Note: Your SD card slot is spring-loaded. To remove the SD card, press the card in and the system ejects it. Do not attempt to pull the card to remove it as this could cause damage.

The card slot can be used for your navigation card (if equipped). See *Navigation system* later in this chapter for more information.

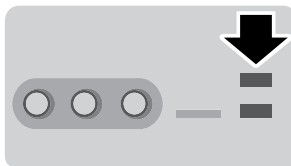


The slot is located either in the center console or behind a small access door in the instrument panel. To access and play music from your SD card slot, press the lower left corner of the touchscreen.



SD logo is a trademark of SD-3C, LLC.

USB Port



The ports are located either in the center console or behind a small access door in the instrument panel. To access and play music from your device, press the lower left corner of the touchscreen.

This feature allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks, flash/thumb drives and also charge devices if they support this feature.

In order to playback video from your iPod®/iPhone® (if compatible), you MUST have a special combination USB/RCA composite video cable (available for purchase from Apple®). When the cable is connected to your iPod®/iPhone®, plug the other end into both the RCA jacks and the USB port.

Playing Music from Your Device

Insert your device and select the USB or SD Card tab once the system recognizes it. You can then select from the following options:

When you select:	You can:
Repeat	Repeat the currently playing song or album.
Shuffle	Play music on the selected album or folder in random order.
Similar Music	Choose music similar to that which is currently playing.
More Info	Displays information, such as current track, artist name, album and genre.
Options	Sound Settings allows you to adjust Bass, Midrange, Treble, Balance and Fade, THX Deep note demo (if equipped), DSP (if equipped), Occupancy mode (if equipped), and speed compensated volume.
	Media Player Settings allows you to select more settings, which can be found under <i>Settings</i> later in this chapter.
	Device Information displays software and firmware information about the currently-connected media device.
	Update Media Index indexes the device each time it is connected to make sure you have the latest voice commands available for all media on the device.
Browse	Browse the contents of the device. It also allows you to search and play by genre, artist, album, etc.

To view song information, such as Title, Artist, File, Folder, Album, and Genre, touch the on-screen album art.

You can also press *What's Playing?* to hear how the system pronounces the current band and song. This can be helpful when using voice commands to make sure the system correctly plays your request.

SD Card and USB Voice Commands

If you are listening to a USB device or an SD card, press the voice button on the steering wheel control. When prompted, say any of the commands in the following chart.

If you are not listening to a USB device or an SD card, press the voice button and, after the tone, say “USB” or “SD card”, then any of the commands in the following chart.

“USB” or “SD CARD”	
“Browse”*	“Play podcast episode <name>”
“Next”	“Play similar music”
“Pause”	“Play song <name>”
“Play”	“Play TV show <name>”**
“Play album <name>”	“Play TV show episode <name>”**
“Play all”	“Play video <name>”**
“Play artist <name>”	“Play video podcast episode <name>”**
“Play audiobook <name>”	“Play video playlist <name>”**
“Play author <name>”	“Previous”
“Play composer <name>”	“Repeat all”
“Play folder <name>”	“Repeat off”
“Play genre <name>”	“Repeat one”
“Play movie <name>”**	“Shuffle”
“Play music video <name>”**	“Shuffle off”
“Play playlist <name>”	“What’s this?”
“Play podcast <name>”	“Help”

*If you have said you would like to browse your USB or SD card, the system prompts you to specify what you would like to browse. When prompted, see the following “Browse” chart.

**These commands are only available in USB mode and are device-dependent.

“BROWSE”	
“Album <name>”	“All video podcasts”*
“All albums”	“All videos”*
“All artists”	“Artist <name>”

"BROWSE"	
"All audiobooks"	"Audiobook <name>"
"All authors"	"Author <name>"
"All composers"	"Composer <name>"
"All folders"	"Folder <name>"
"All genres"	"Genre <name>"
"All movies"*	"Playlist <name>"
"All music videos"*	"Podcast <name>"
"All playlists"	"TV show <name>"*
"All podcasts"	"Video <name>"*
"All songs"	"Video playlist <name>"*
"All TV shows"*	"Video podcast <name>"*
"All video playlists"*	"Help"

*These commands are only available in USB mode and are device-dependent.

Bluetooth Audio

Your system allows you to stream audio over your vehicle's speakers from your connected, Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone.



To access, press the lower left corner on the touchscreen, then select the BT Stereo tab.

Bluetooth Audio Voice Commands



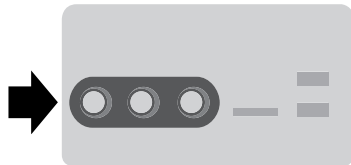
If you are listening to a Bluetooth audio device, press the voice button on the steering wheel control. When prompted, say any of the commands in the following chart.

If you are not listening to a Bluetooth audio device, press the voice button and, after the tone, say "Bluetooth Audio", then any of the commands in the following chart.

Note: If your Bluetooth device supports streaming metadata, all the commands below are available. If your device does not, only "Next song", "Pause", "Play" and "Previous song" are available.

Bluetooth Voice Commands		
“Browse album <name>”	“Browse composer <name>”	“Play genre <name>”
“Browse all albums”	“Browse folder <name>”	“Play playlist <name>”
“Browse all artists”	“Browse genre <name>”	“Play podcast episode <name>”
“Browse all audiobooks”	“Browse playlist <name>”	“Play similar music”
“Browse all authors”	“Browse podcast <name>”	“Play song <name>”
“Browse all composers”	“Next”	“Previous”
“Browse all folders”	“Pause”	“Repeat all”
“Browse all genres”	“Play”	“Repeat off”
“Browse all playlists”	“Play album <name>”	“Repeat one”
“Browse all podcasts”	“Play artist <name>”	“Shuffle”
“Browse all songs”	“Play audiobook <name>”	“Shuffle album”
“Browse artist <name>”	“Play author <name>”	“Shuffle off”
“Browse audiobook <name>”	“Play composer <name>”	“What’s this?”
“Browse author <name>”	“Play folder <name>”	“Help”

A/V Inputs



Your A/V inputs allow you to connect an auxiliary audio/video source (game systems, personal camcorders, etc.) by connecting RCA cords (not included) to these input jacks. The jacks are yellow, red and white and are located either behind a small access door on the

instrument panel or in your center console.

You can also use the A/V inputs as an auxiliary input jack (AIJ) to play music from your portable music player over your vehicle’s speakers. Plug

in your one-eighth inch (three and one-half millimeter) RCA adapter into the two left A/V input jacks (red and white).

Press the lower left corner of the touchscreen, then select A/V In.

To use the auxiliary input jack feature, make sure that your portable music player is designed to be used with headphones and that it is fully charged. You also need an audio extension cable with stereo male one-eighth inch (three and one-half millimeter) connectors at one end and a RCA jack at the other.

1. Begin with the vehicle parked and the radio and portable device are turned off.
2. Attach one end of the audio extension cable to the headphone output of your player and the other end into the adaptor in one of the two left A/V input jacks (white or red) inside the center console.
3. Press the lower left corner on the touchscreen. Select either a tuned station from the FM tab or the CD tab (if there is a CD already loaded into the system.) Adjust the volume to a comfortable listening level.
4. Turn the portable music player on and adjust the volume to one-half the maximum.
5. Press the lower left corner on the touchscreen. Select the A/V In tab. (You should hear audio from your portable music player although it may be low.)
6. Adjust the sound on your portable music player until it reaches the level of the FM station or CD by switching back and forth between the controls.

In order to playback video from your iPod® or iPhone® (if compatible), you must have a special combination USB/RCA composite video cable (available for purchase from Apple®). When the cable is connected to your iPod® or iPhone®, plug the other end into both the RCA jacks and the USB port.

Note: For safety reasons, connecting or adjusting the settings on your portable music player should not be attempted while the vehicle is moving. Also, the portable music player should be stored in a secure location, such as the center console or the glove box, when the vehicle is in motion. The audio extension cable must be long enough to allow the portable music player to be safely stored while the vehicle is in motion.

Troubleshooting

- Do not connect the audio input jack to a line level output. The AIJ only works correctly with devices that have a headphone output with a volume control.

- Do not set the portable music player's volume level higher than is necessary to match the volume of the CD or FM radio as this causes distortion and reduces sound quality.
- If the music sounds distorted at lower listening levels, turn the portable music player volume down. If the problems persists, replace or recharge the batteries in the portable music player.
- The portable music player must be controlled in the same manner when it is used with headphones as the AIJ does not provide control (play, pause, etc.) over the attached portable music player.

PHONE

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC®. Once your phone is paired, you can access many options using the touchscreen or voice commands. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cellular phone's functionality. At a minimum, most cellular phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call
- Ending a call
- Using privacy mode
- Dial a number
- Redial
- Call waiting notification
- Caller ID

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's user manual and visit www.SYNCMYRide.com, www.SYNCMYRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca.

Pairing Your Phone for the First Time



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

The first thing you must do to use the phone features of SYNC is to pair your Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone with SYNC. This allows you to use your phone in a hands-free manner.

1. Touch Add Phone in the upper left corner of the touchscreen.
2. Make sure that Bluetooth is set to ON and that your cellular phone is in the proper mode. See your phone's user guide if necessary.
3. When prompted on your phone's display, enter the six-digit PIN provided by SYNC in the radio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.
4. The system asks you if you want to download your phone book.

Depending on your phone's capability, you may be prompted with additional options. For more information on your phone's capability, see your phone's user guide and visit the website.

Pairing Subsequent Phones

Note: Make sure the vehicle ignition and radio are turned on and that the transmission is in position **P**.

1. Press the phone corner of the touchscreen > Settings > Phone > BT Devices > Add Device.
2. Make sure that Bluetooth is set to ON and that your cellular phone is in the proper mode. See your phone's user guide if necessary.
3. When prompted on your phone's display, enter the six-digit PIN provided by SYNC on the screen. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.
4. The system asks you if you want to download your phone book.

Depending on your phone's capability, you may be prompted with additional options. For more information on your phone's capability, see your phone's user guide and visit the website.

Making Calls



Press the voice button. When prompted, say "Call <name>" or say "Dial", then the desired number.



To end the call or exit phone mode, press and hold the phone button.

Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Call information appears in the display if it's available.



Accept the call by pressing Accept on the touchscreen or by pressing the phone button on your steering wheel control.

Reject the call by pressing Reject on the touchscreen or by pressing and holding the phone button on your steering wheel control.

Ignore the call by doing nothing. SYNC logs it as a missed call.

Phone Menu Options

Press the top left corner on your touchscreen to select from the following options:

When you select:	You can:
Phone	Access the on-screen numerical pad to enter a number and place a call. During an active call, you can also choose to mute the call, put it on hold, activate privacy (returns the call to your cellular phone), join two calls or end the call.
Quick Dial	Select and call contacts stored in your phonebook contacts and call history folder.
Phone Book	Access and call any contacts in your previously downloaded phone book. The system places the entries in alphabetical categories summarized at the top of the screen. To turn on contact picture settings (if your device supports this feature), press Phone > Settings > Manage Phonebook > Download photos from Phonebook > On. Certain smart phones <i>may</i> support transferring street addresses when listed with phone book contact information. If this feature is supported, you can select and use these addresses as destinations and also save them as favorites.

When you select:	You can:
History	Access any previously dialed, received or missed calls while your Bluetooth-enabled phone was connected to SYNC. You can also choose to save these to your Favorites or Quick Dial. This is a phone-dependent feature. If your phone does not support downloading call history using Bluetooth, SYNC keeps track of calls made with the SYNC system.
Messaging	Send text messages using your touchscreen. See <i>Text messaging</i> later in this section.
Settings	Access various phone settings, such as Bluetooth on or off, Manage Your Phone Book and more. See <i>Phone settings</i> later in this section.

Text Messaging

Note: Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are phone-dependent features.

Note: Certain features in text messaging are speed-dependent and cannot be completed when the vehicle is traveling at speeds over 5 mph (8 km/h).

Note: SYNC does not download read text messages from your phone.

You can send and receive text messages using Bluetooth, read them aloud and translate text messaging acronyms, such as LOL.

1. Touch the top left corner of the display to access the phone menu.
2. Select Messaging.
3. Choose from the following:
 - Listen (speaker icon)
 - Dial
 - Send Text
 - View
 - Delete
 - Delete All

Composing a Text Message

Note: This is a speed-dependent feature and cannot be completed when the vehicle is traveling at speeds over 5 mph (8 km/h).

Note: Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are phone-dependent features.

1. Touch the top left corner of the display to access the phone menu.
2. Press Messaging > Send Text.
3. Enter a phone number or choose from your phone book.
4. You can select from the following options:
 - **Send** sends the message as it is.
 - **Edit Text** allows you to customize the pre-defined message or create a message on your own

You can then preview the message and verify the recipient as well as update the message list and send it to a connected device (i.e., USB drive).

Pre-defined Text Message Options
I'll call you back in a few minutes.
I just left, I'll be there soon.
Can you give me a call?
I'm on my way.
I'm running a few minutes late.
I'm ahead of schedule, so I'll be there early.
I'm outside.
I'll call you when I get there.
OK
Yes
No
Thanks
Stuck in traffic.
Call me later.
LOL

Receiving a Text Message

Note: If you select View and your vehicle is traveling over 5 mph (8 km/h), the system offers to read the message to you instead of allowing you to view it while driving.

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the screen displays a pop-up with the caller name and ID, if supported by your phone. You can press:

- **View** to view the text message.

- **Listen** for SYNC to read the message to you.
- **Dial** to call the contact.
- **Ignore** to exit the screen.

Phone Settings

Press Phone > Settings, then select from the following settings:

If you select:	You can:
Bluetooth Devices	Connect, disconnect, add or delete a device, as well as save it as a favorite.
Bluetooth	Turn Bluetooth on or off.
Do Not Disturb	Have all calls go directly to your voice mail and not ring in the vehicle. With this feature turned on, text message notifications are also suppressed and do not ring inside the vehicle.
911 Assist	Turn 911 Assist® on or off. See <i>911 Assist®</i> in the <i>SYNC Services and Applications</i> section.
Phone Ringer	Select what ring tone you would like to hear when you receive a call. Choose from possible system ring tones, your currently paired phone's ring tone, a beep, text-to-speech or if you would like the notification to be silent.
Text Message Notification	Select how you would like to be notified when you receive a text message, if supported by your phone. Choose from possible system alert tones, text-to-speech or silent.
Internet Data Connection*	Use this screen to make adjustments to your internet data connection. Select to make your connection profile with the PAN (personal area network) or to turn off your connection. You can also choose to make adjustments to your settings or have the system always connect, never connect when roaming or query on connect. Press ? for additional information.

If you select:	You can:
Manage Phonebook	Access features, such as automatic phonebook download, re-download your phonebook, add contacts from your phone as well as delete or upload your phonebook.
Roaming Warning	Be alerted to when your phone is in roaming mode.

*If compatible.

Phone Voice Commands



Press the voice button on the steering wheel control. After the tone, say any of the following commands:

“PHONE”	
“Bluetooth off”	“Hold call off”*
“Bluetooth on”	“Hold on”*
“Call”	“Join calls”*
“Call <name>”	“Listen to text message <#>”
“Call <name> at home”	“Listen to text messages”
“Call <name> at work”	“Messages”**
“Call <name> on cell”	“Mute call”*
“Call <name> on other”	“Pair phone”
“Call voicemail”	“Privacy on”*
“Dial”	“Reply to text messages”
“Do not disturb off”	“Turn ringer off”
“Do not disturb on”	“Turn ringer on”
“Forward text messages”	“Unmute call”*
“Go to hands free”*	“Help”

*These commands are only available during an active call.

**If you have said “Messages”, see the following “Messages” chart.

“MESSAGES”
“Call”
“Forward text messages”
“Listen to text message <#>”
“Listen to text messages”
“Reply to text messages”
“Help”

INFORMATION

Under the Information menu, you can access features, such as:

- SYNC® Services
- SIRIUS® Travel Link™
- Alerts
- Calendar
- SYNC Applications

If your vehicle is equipped with the navigation system, press the “i” (Information) button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with the navigation system, press the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

SYNC Services (If Equipped, U.S. Only)

Note: SYNC Services requires activation prior to use. Visit www.SYNCMYride.com to register and check your eligibility for complimentary services. Standard phone and message rates may apply. Subscription may be required. You must also have the active SYNC Services Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone paired and connected to the system in order to connect to, and use, SYNC Services. See the *Phone* section for pairing instructions.

Note: This feature does not function properly if you have enabled caller ID blocking on your mobile phone. Make sure your mobile phone is not blocking caller ID before using SYNC Services.

Note: The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle, and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions. Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of errors, changes in roads, traffic conditions or driving conditions.

Note: When you connect, the service uses GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors to collect the vehicle's current location, travel direction and speed to help provide you with the directions, traffic reports, or business searches you request. Further, to provide the services you request and for continuous improvement, the service may collect and record call details and voice communications. For more information, see SYNC Services Terms and Conditions at www.SYNCMYRide.com. If you do not want Ford or its service providers to collect the vehicle travel information or other information identified in the Terms and Conditions, do not activate or use the service.

SYNC Services uses advanced vehicle sensors, integrated GPS technology and comprehensive map and traffic data, to give you personalized traffic reports, precise turn-by-turn directions, business search, news, sports, weather and more. For a complete list of services, or to learn more, please visit www.SYNCMYRide.com.

Connecting to SYNC Services Using Voice Commands

1. Press the voice button.
2. When prompted, say "Services". This initiates an outgoing call to SYNC Services using your paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone.
3. Once you are connected to the service, follow the voice prompts to request the desired service, such as "Traffic" or "Directions". You can also say "What are my choices?" to receive a complete list of available services from which to choose.
4. Say "Services" to return to the Services main menu or for help, say "Help".

Connecting to SYNC Services Using the Touchscreen

If your vehicle is equipped with the navigation system, press the Information button.

If your vehicle is not equipped with the navigation system, press the green tab on your touchscreen.

1. Select Connect to Services to initiate an outgoing call to SYNC Services using your phone.
2. Once connected, follow the voice prompts to request your desired Service, such as Traffic or Directions. You can also say "What are my choices?" to receive a complete list of available services from which to choose.
3. To return to the Services menu, say "Services" or for help, say "Help".

Receiving Turn-by-Turn Directions

1. When connected to SYNC Services, say “Directions” or “Business Search”. To find the closest business or type of business to your current location, just say “Business Search” and then “Search Near Me”. If you need further assistance in finding a location, you can say “Operator” at any time within a Directions or Business search to speak with a live operator. You may also be prompted to speak with an operator when the automatic system has difficulty matching your voice request. The live operator can assist you by searching for businesses by name or by category, residential addresses by street address or by name or specific street intersections. Operator Assist is a feature of your SYNC Services subscription. For more information on Operator Assist, visit www.SYNCMyRide.com/support.
2. Follow the voice prompts to select your Destination. After the route download is complete, the phone call is automatically ended.

If your vehicle is not equipped with the navigation feature:

- Turn-by-turn directions appear in the infotainment display, in the status bar of your touchscreen system and also on the SYNC Services screen. You also receive driving instructions from audible prompts.
- When on an active route, you can select Route Summary or Route Status using the touchscreen controls or voice commands to view the Route summary turn list or the Route Status ETA. You can also turn voice guidance on or off, cancel the route or update the route.

If you miss a turn, SYNC automatically asks if you want the route updated. Just say, “Yes” when prompted and a new route is delivered to your vehicle.

If your vehicle is equipped with the navigation feature, SYNC Services downloads your requested destination to the navigation system. The navigation system then calculates the route and provides driving instructions. See the *Navigation system* section for more information.

Disconnecting from SYNC Services

1. Press and hold the phone button on the steering wheel.
2. Say “Goodbye” from the SYNC Services main menu.

SYNC Services Quick Tips	
Personalizing	You can personalize your Services feature to provide quicker access to your most used or favorite information. You can save address points, such as work or home. You can also save favorite information like sports teams, such as Detroit Lions, or a news category. To learn more, log onto www.SYNCMYRide.com .
Push to interrupt	Press the voice button at any time (while you are connected to SYNC TDI Services) to interrupt a voice prompt or an audio clip (such as a sports report) and say your voice command.
Portable	Your subscription is associated with your Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone number, not your VIN (Vehicle Identification Number). You can pair and connect your phone to any vehicle equipped with Traffic, Directions and Information and continue enjoying your personalized services.

SYNC Services Voice Commands



When a route has been downloaded (non-navigation systems), press the voice button on the steering wheel control. When prompted, say any of the following commands:

“SERVICES”
“Cancel route”
“Navigation voice off”
“Navigation voice on”
“Next turn”
“Route status”
“Route summary”
“Services”
“Update route”
“Help”

SIRIUS Travel Link (If Equipped and If Activated)

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take their focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: In order to use SIRIUS Travel Link, your vehicle must be equipped with navigation and your navigation SD card must be in the SD card slot.

Note: A paid subscription is required to access and use these features. Go to www.siriusxm.com/travellink for more information.

Note: Visit www.siriusxm.com/traffic# and click on “Coverage map and details” for a complete listing of all traffic areas covered by SIRIUS Travel Link.

Note: Neither SIRIUS nor Ford is responsible for any errors or inaccuracies in the SIRIUS Travel Link services or its use in vehicles.

SIRIUS Travel Link (if activated) can help you locate the best gas prices, find movie listings, get current traffic alerts, access the current weather map, get accurate ski conditions and scores to current sports games.



Press the information button and then select Travel Link, then choose from any of the following services:

When you select:	You can:
Traffic On Route	Identify traffic incidents on your route, nearby your vehicle's current location or near any of your favorite places (if programmed).
Traffic Nearby	
Fuel Prices	View fuel prices at stations close to your vehicle's location or on an active navigation route.
Movie Listings	View nearby movie theaters and their show times (if available).

When you select:	You can:
Weather	View the nearby weather, current weather, or the five day forecast for the chosen area. Select Map to see the weather map which can show storms, radar information, charts and winds. Select Area to select from a listing of weather locations.
Sports Info	View scores and schedules from a variety of sports. You can also save up to 10 favorite teams for easier access. The score automatically refreshes when a game is in progress.
Ski Conditions	View ski conditions for a specific area.

SIRIUS Travel Link Voice Commands

Note: In order to use SIRIUS Travel Link, your vehicle must be equipped with navigation and your navigation SD card must be in the SD card slot.



Press the voice button and when prompted, say any of the following:

Travel Link Voice Commands	
“5-day weather forecast”	“Sports scores”**
“Fuel prices”	“Traffic”
“Movie listings”	“Travel Link”
“Sports headlines”	“Weather”
“Sports schedule”*	“Weather map”

*If you have said, “Sports headlines”, “Sports schedule” or “Sports scores”, you may say any of the commands in the “Sports headlines, Sports schedules and Sports scores” commands chart:

**If you have said, “Travel Link”, you may say any of the commands in the “Travel Link” chart:

Sports Headlines, Sports Schedules and Sports Scores Voice Commands	
“Baseball”	“My teams”
“College basketball”	“NBA”

Sports Headlines, Sports Schedules and Sports Scores Voice Commands		
“College football”		“NFL”
“Golf”		“NHL”
“MLS”		“WNBA”
“Motor sports”		
“TRAVEL LINK”		
“5–day weather forecast”	“Golf schedule”	“NBA scores”
“Baseball headlines”	“MLS headlines”	“NFL headlines”
“Baseball schedule”	“MLS schedule”	“NFL schedule”
“Baseball scores”	“MLS scores”	“NFL scores”
“College basketball headlines”	“Motor sports”	“NHL headlines”
“College basketball schedule”	“Motor sports order”	“NHL schedule”
“College basketball scores”	“Motor sports schedule”	“NHL scores”
“College football headlines”	“Movie listings”	“Traffic”
“College football schedule”	“My team headlines”	“Weather”
“College football scores”	“My teams schedule”	“Weather map”
“Fuel prices”	“My teams scores”	“WNBA headlines”
“Golf headlines”	“NBA headlines”	“WNBA schedule”
“Golf leaderboard”	“NBA schedule”	“WNBA scores”

Alerts



Press the information button, then select Alerts. You can select a message and choose to:

- **View** the complete message.
- **Delete** the message.
- **Delete All** messages.

This screen displays any system messages, such as an SD card fault, etc.

Note: The system alerts you to any messages by turning the information icon yellow. When the messages are read or deleted, the icon returns to white.

Calendar



Press the information button, then select Calendar. You can view the current calendar by day, week or month.

911 Assist® (If Equipped)



WARNING: Unless the 911 Assist setting is set on prior to a crash, the system will not dial for help which could delay response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death after a crash.



WARNING: Do not wait for 911 Assist to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid delayed response time which could increase the risk of serious injury or death after a crash. If you do not hear 911 Assist within five seconds of the crash, the system or phone may be damaged or non-functional.



WARNING: Always place your phone in a secure location in the vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a collision. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent 911 Assist from working properly.

Note: SYNC 911 Assist feature must be set on prior to the incident.

Note: Before setting this feature on, ensure that you read the 911 Assist privacy notice later in this section for important information.

Note: If 911 Assist is turned on or off by any user, that setting applies for all paired phones. If 911 Assist is turned off, a voice message plays and/or a display message/icon comes on when the vehicle is started after a previously paired phone connects.

Note: Every phone operates differently. While SYNC 911 Assist works with most cellular phones, some may have trouble using this feature.

If a crash deploys an airbag or activates the fuel pump shut-off, your SYNC-equipped vehicle may be able to contact emergency services by dialing 911 through a paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled phone. For more information about 911 Assist, visit www.SYNCMyRide.com, www.SYNCMyRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca.

- For information on airbag deployment, see the *Supplementary Restraints System* chapter.
- For information on the fuel pump shut-off, see the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

Setting 911 Assist On



Press the information button > Apps > 911 Assist, then select On.

You can also access 911 Assist by:

- Pressing the Settings icon > Settings > Phone > 911 Assist, or
- Pressing the Settings icon > Help > 911 Assist.

To Ensure that 911 Assist Works Properly

- SYNC must be powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- SYNC 911 Assist feature must be set on prior to the incident.
- A Bluetooth-enabled and compatible phone has to be paired and connected to SYNC.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

In the Event of a Crash

Not all crashes deploy an airbag or activate the fuel pump shut-off (which would activate 911 Assist); however, if 911 Assist is triggered, SYNC tries to contact emergency services. If a connected phone is damaged or loses connection to SYNC, SYNC searches for, and tries to connect to, any available previously paired phone and tries to make the call to 911.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time (about 10 seconds) to cancel the call. Failure to cancel the call results in SYNC attempting to dial 911.

- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: “SYNC will attempt to call 911, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel.”

If the call is not cancelled and a successful call is made, a prerecorded message is played for the 911 operator, then the occupant(s) in the vehicle is able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately, because not all 911 systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

911 Assist May Not Work If

- Your cellular phone or 911 Assist hardware was damaged in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or SYNC system has no power.
- The phone(s) paired and connected to the system was thrown from the vehicle.

911 Assist Privacy Notice

Once 911 Assist is set on, it may disclose to emergency services that the vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to 911 operators the vehicle location, and/or other details about the vehicle or crash to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not turn the feature on.

Vehicle Health Report (If Equipped, U.S. Only)



WARNING: Always follow scheduled maintenance instructions, regularly inspect your vehicle, and seek repair for any damage or problem you suspect. Vehicle Health Report supplements, but cannot replace, normal maintenance and vehicle inspection. Vehicle Health Report only monitors certain systems that are electronically monitored by the vehicle and will not monitor or report the status of any other system, (i.e., , brake lining wear). Failure to perform scheduled maintenance and regularly inspect your vehicle may result in vehicle damage and serious injury.

Note: Your Vehicle Health Report feature requires activation prior to use. Visit www.SYNCMYride.com to register. There is no fee or subscription associated with Vehicle Health Report, but you must register to use this feature.

Note: This feature may not function properly if you have enabled caller ID blocking on your mobile phone. Before running a report, review the *Vehicle Health Report privacy notice*.

Note: In order to allow a break-in period for your vehicle, you may not be able to create a Vehicle Health Report until your vehicle odometer has reached 200 miles.

Note: Cellular phone and SMS charges may apply when making a report.

Register for Vehicle Health Report and set your report preferences at www.SYNCMYRide.com. After registering you can request a Vehicle Health Report (inside your vehicle). Return to your account at www.SYNCMYRide.com to view your report. You can also choose for SYNC to automatically remind you to run reports at specific mileage intervals. Cellular phone airtime usage may apply when reporting.

The system allows you to check your vehicle's overall health in the form of a diagnostic report card. The Vehicle Health Report contains valuable information, such as:

- Vehicle Diagnostic Information
- Scheduled maintenance
- Open Recalls and Field Service Actions
- Unserviced items from vehicle inspections by your authorized dealer.

Making a Report



To run a report by touchscreen, touch the information button > Apps > Vehicle Health Report.



To run a report by voice command, press the voice button on the steering wheel and, when prompted, say "Vehicle health report".

Vehicle Health Report Privacy Notice

When you run a Vehicle Health Report, Ford Motor Company may collect your cellular phone number (to process your report request) and diagnostic information about your vehicle. Certain versions or updates to Vehicle Health Report may also collect additional vehicle information. Ford may use the vehicle information it collects for any purpose. If you do not want to disclose your cellular phone number or vehicle information, do not run the feature or set up your Vehicle Health Report profile at www.SYNCMYRide.com. See www.SYNCMYRide.com - Vehicle Health Report Terms and Conditions, and Privacy Statement - for more information.

SETTINGS

Under this menu, you can set your clock, access and make adjustments to the display, sound and vehicle settings as well as access settings for specific modes or the help feature.

Clock

Note: The date is set by your vehicle's GPS; you cannot manually set the date.

Note: If the battery has been disconnected, the vehicle needs to acquire a GPS signal to update the clock. Once your vehicle acquires the signal, it may take a few minutes for the update to display the correct time.

1. Press the Settings icon > Clock.
2. Press + and - to adjust the time.

From this screen, you can also make other adjustments, such as 12- or 24-hour mode, activate GPS time synchronization and have the system automatically update for daylight savings time and new time zones.

Once you update any settings they are automatically saved.

Display

You can make adjustments to the touchscreen display through the touchscreen or by pressing the voice button on your steering wheel controls and when prompted, say "Display settings".

To access and make adjustments using the touchscreen, press the Settings icon > Display.

Brightness allows you to make the screen display brighter or dimmer.

Mode allows you to set the screen to a certain brightness or have the system automatically change it based on the outside light level.

- If you select AUTO or NIGHT, you have the options of turning the display's Auto Dim feature on or off and changing the Auto Dim Manual Offset feature.

Edit Wallpaper

- You can have your touchscreen display the default photo or upload your own.

Uploading Photos for Your Home Screen Wallpaper

Note: You cannot load photos directly from your camera. You must access the photos from either your USB mass storage device or from an SD card.

Note: Photographs with extremely large dimensions (i.e., , 2048 x 1536) may not be compatible and appear as a blank (black) image on the display.

Your system allows you to upload and view up to 32 photos.

To access, press the Settings icon > Display > Edit Wallpaper, then follow the system prompts to upload your photographs. Only the photograph(s) which meet the following conditions are displayed:

- Compatible file formats are as follows: .jpg, .gif, .png, .bmp
- Each file must be 1.5 MB or less.
- Recommended dimensions: 800 x 384

Sound

Press the Settings icon > Sound to access settings for:

Sound Settings	
Bass	THX Deep Note Demo*
Midrange	DSP*
Treble	Occupancy Mode*
Set Balance and Fade	Speed Compensated Volume

*If equipped.

Rear View Camera (If Equipped)

This menu allows you to access settings for your rear view camera.

Press the Menu icon > Vehicle > Rear View Camera, then select from the following settings

- Rear Camera Delay
- Visual Park Aid Alert
- Guidelines

Enable Valet Mode

Note: If you are locked out and need to reset the PIN, you can enter 3681 and the system unlocks.

Valet mode allows you to lock the system so that none of your information on the system can be accessed until it is unlocked with the correct PIN.

1. Press the Menu icon > Vehicle > Enable Valet Mode.
2. When prompted, enter a four-digit PIN.

After you press Continue, the system is locked until the correct PIN is entered again.

Door Keypad Code (If Equipped)

To change the keypad code for your keyless entry keypad system:

1. Press the Menu icon > Vehicle > Door Keypad Code.
2. Enter your current factory code, then, when prompted, enter your new code.

Active Park Assist (If Equipped)

When activated, your system will display directions for you regarding the active park assist process.

For complete information on this system, please refer to *Active park assist* in the *Driving Aids* chapter.

Settings

Access and adjust system settings, voice features, as well as phone, navigation and wireless settings. Some of these settings can also be accessed with regard to their specific modes (i.e., , phone and media).

System

Press the Settings icon > Settings > System, then select from the following:

System	
Language	Select to have the touchscreen display in English, Spanish or French.
Distance	Select to display units in kilometers or miles.
Temperature	Select to display units in Celsius or Fahrenheit.
System Prompt Volume	Adjust the volume of voice prompts from the system.
Touch Screen Button Beep	Select to have the system beep to confirm choices made through the touchscreen.
Touch Panel Button Beep	Select to have the system beep to confirm button choices made through the climate or audio system.
Keyboard Layout	Have the touchscreen keyboard display in QWERTY or ABC format.
Install Applications	Install any downloaded applications or view the current software licenses.
Master Reset	Select to restore factory defaults. This erases all personal settings and personal data.

Voice Control

Press the Settings icon > Settings > Voice Control, then select from the following:

Voice Control	
Interaction Mode	Standard interaction mode provides more detailed interaction and guidance. Advanced mode has less audible interaction and more tone prompts.
Confirmation Prompts	Have the system ask you short questions if it has not clearly heard or understood your request. Note: Even with confirmation prompts turned off, you may be asked to confirm settings occasionally.
Media Candidate Lists	Candidate lists are possible results from your voice commands. If these are turned off, the system simply makes a best guess at your request.
Phone Candidate Lists	Candidate lists are possible results from your voice commands. If these are turned off, the system simply makes a best guess at your request.
Voice Control Volume	Allows you to adjust the voice volume level.

Media Player

Press the Settings icon > Settings > Media Player, then select from the following:

Media Player	
Autoplay	With this feature on, the system automatically switches to the media source upon initial connection and you can listen to music which has already been randomly indexed during the indexing process. With this feature off, the system does not automatically switch to the inserted media source.
Bluetooth Devices	Select to connect, disconnect, add or delete a device. You can also set a device as your favorite so that the system automatically attempts to connect to that device at every ignition cycle.
Gracenote® Database Info	Allows you to view the version level of the Gracenote Database.
Gracenote® Mgmt	With this feature on, metadata information is pulled from the Gracenote Database for your music files. This overrides information from your device. This feature defaults to off.
Cover Art Priority	With this feature on, cover art is pulled from the Gracenote Database for your music files. This overrides any art from your device. This feature defaults to Media Player.

Navigation

Press the Settings icon > Settings > Navigation, then select from the following:

Navigation	
Map Preferences	Turn breadcrumbs on and off.
	Have the system display your turn list top to bottom or bottom to top.
	Turn the Parking POI notification on and off.
Route Preferences	Have the system display the shortest route, fastest route or most ecological route.
	Have the system avoid freeways.
	Have the system avoid tollroads.
	Have the system avoid ferries or car trains.
	Have the system use HOV (high-occupancy vehicle) lanes.
Navigation Preferences	Have the system use guidance prompts.
	Have the system automatically fill-in State/Province information.
Traffic Preferences	Have the system display areas where road work occurs.
	Have the system display incident map icons on the map.
	Have the system display areas where difficult driving conditions may occur.
	Have the system display areas where snow and ice on the road may occur.
	Have the system display any smog alerts.
	Have the system display weather warnings.
	Have the system display where there may be reduced visibility.
	Have the system turn on your radio for traffic announcements.
Avoid Areas	Enter specific areas that you would like to avoid on planned navigation routes.

Phone Settings

Press the Settings icon > Settings > Phone, then select from the following:

Phone	
Bluetooth Devices	Connect, disconnect, add or delete a device, as well as save it as a favorite.
Bluetooth	Turn Bluetooth on and off.
Do Not Disturb	Have all calls go directly to your voice mail and not ring inside the vehicle. With this feature turned on, text message notifications are also suppressed and do not ring inside the vehicle.
911 Assist	Turn 911 Assist on and off. See <i>911 Assist</i> in the <i>SYNC Applications and Services</i> section.
Phone Ringer	Select the type of notification for phone calls - ring tone, beep, text to speech, or have it be silent.
Text Message Notification	Select the type of notification for text messages - alert tone, beep, text to speech, or have it be silent.
Internet Data Connection	If compatible with your phone, you can make adjustments to your internet data connection. Select to make your connection profile with the PAN (personal area network) or to turn off your connection. You can also choose to make adjustments to your settings or have the system always connect, never connect when roaming or query on connect. Press ? for additional information.
Manage Phonebook	Access features, such as automatic phonebook download, re-download your phonebook, add contacts from your phone as well as delete or upload your phonebook.
Roaming Warning	Have the system alert you when in Roaming mode.

Wireless & Internet

Your system has a Wi-Fi feature which creates a wireless network within your vehicle, thereby allowing other devices (i.e., personal computers or phones) in your vehicle to speak to each other, share files, play games, etc. Using this Wi-Fi feature, everyone in your vehicle can also gain access the internet if you have a USB mobile broadband connection inside the vehicle, your phone supports PAN (personal area networking) and if you are parked outside of a wireless hotspot.

Press the Settings icon > Settings > Wireless & Internet, then select from the following:

Wireless & Internet	
Wi-Fi Settings	Wi-Fi Network (Client) Mode Turn the wi-fi feature on and off in your vehicle. Make sure it is turned on for connectivity purposes.
	Choose a Wireless Network Use a previously stored wireless network. You can categorize by alphabetical listing, priority and signal strength. You can also choose to search for a network, connect to a network, disconnect from a network, receive more information, prioritize a network or delete a network.
	Gateway (Access Point) Mode Make SYNC an access point for a phone or a computer by turning this feature on. This forms the local area network within the vehicle for things, such as game playing, file transfer, internet browsing, etc. Press ? for more information.
	Gateway (Access Point) Settings View and change settings for using SYNC as the internet gateway.
	Gateway (Access Point) Device List View who has connected to your wi-fi connection recently.

Wireless & Internet	
USB Mobile Broadband	Instead of using wi-fi, your system can also use a USB mobile broadband connection to access the internet. (You must activate your mobile broadband device on your PC prior to connecting it to the system.) This screen allows you to set up what is your typical area for your USB mobile broadband connection. (USB mobile broadband settings may not be displayed if the device is already activated.) You can select the following: Country, Carrier, Phone Number, User Name and Password.
Bluetooth Settings	Shows you what device is currently paired with the system as well as giving you your typical Bluetooth options to connect, disconnect, set as favorite, delete and add device. Bluetooth is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG.
Prioritize Connection Methods	Choose your connection methods and change them as needed. You can select to Change Order and have the system either always attempt to connect using a USB mobile broadband or using wi-fi.

The Wi-Fi CERTIFIED Logo is a certification mark of the Wi-Fi Alliance.



Wi-Fi

Your system has a Wi-Fi feature which creates a wireless network within your vehicle, thereby allowing other devices (i.e. personal computers or phones) in your vehicle to speak to each other, share files, play games, etc. Using this Wi-Fi feature, everyone in your vehicle can also gain access the internet if:

- You have a USB mobile broadband connection inside the vehicle
- Your phone supports PAN (personal area networking)
- You are parked outside of a wireless hotspot

To access, press the Menu icon > Settings > Wireless and Internet > Wi-Fi settings, then select from the following options:

- **Wi-Fi Network (Client) Mode:** Turn the wi-fi feature on and off in your vehicle. Make sure it is turned on for connectivity purposes.
- **Choose a Wireless Network:** Use a previously stored wireless network. You can categorize by alphabetical listing, priority and signal strength. You can also choose to search for a network, connect to a network, disconnect from a network, receive more information, prioritize a network or delete a network.
- **Gateway Access Point Mode:** Make SYNC an access point for a phone or a computer by turning this feature on. This forms the local area network within the vehicle for things such as game playing, file transfer, internet browsing, etc. Press ? for more information.
- **Gateway (Access Point) Settings:** View and change settings for using SYNC as the internet gateway.
- **Gateway Access Point Device List:** View who has connected to your Wi-Fi connection recently.

Press the ? button (if available) for additional information.



The Wi-Fi CERTIFIED Logo is a certification mark of the Wi-Fi Alliance.

USB Mobile Broadband

Instead of using Wi-Fi, your system can also use a USB mobile broadband connection to access the internet. (You must activate your mobile broadband device on your PC prior to connecting it to the system.) This screen allows you to set up what is your typical area for your USB mobile broadband connection. (USB mobile broadband settings may not be displayed if the device is already activated.) You can select the following:

- Country
- Carrier
- Phone Number
- User Name
- Password

Prioritize Connection Methods

This screen allows you to choose your connection methods and change them as needed. You can select to Change Order and have the system either always attempt to connecting using a USB mobile broadband or using Wi-Fi.

Bluetooth Settings

Shows you what device is currently paired with the system as well as giving you your typical Bluetooth options to connect, disconnect, set as favorite, delete and add device.

Bluetooth is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG.

Help

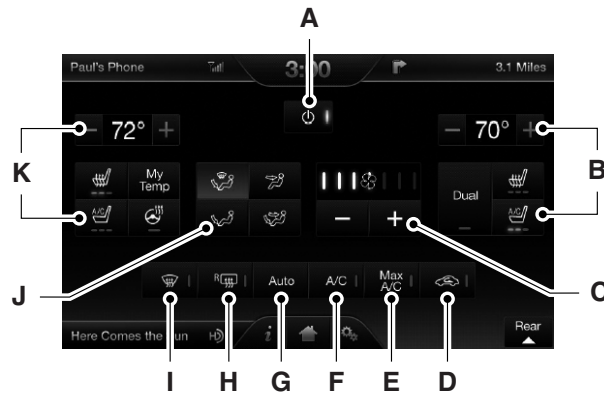
Press the Settings icon > Settings > Help, then select from the following:

Help	
Where Am I?	View the vehicle's current location, if your vehicle is equipped with navigation. If your vehicle is not equipped with navigation, nothing is displayed.
System Information	View the following information: Touchscreen system serial number, vehicle identification number (VIN), touchscreen system software version, navigation system version (if applicable), map database version (if equipped with navigation), Sirius satellite radio ESN (if activated) and Gracenote® Database Information and Library version
Software Licenses	View the licenses for any software and applications installed on your system.
Driving Restrictions	Certain features are disabled when your vehicle is moving.
911 Assist	Turn 911 Assist on and off. See <i>911 Assist</i> in the <i>SYNC Applications and Services</i> section.
Voice Command List	View categorized lists of voice commands.

To access Help using the voice commands, press the voice button, then, after the tone, say "Help". The system provides voice commands that can be used in the current mode.

CLIMATE CONTROLS

Depending on your vehicle line and option package, your climate screen may look different than what is shown here.



A. **Power:** Touch to turn the system on and off. Outside air cannot enter the vehicle when the system is off.

B. **Passenger settings:**

- Touch DUAL to turn on the passenger side temperature control.
- Touch + or – to adjust the temperature.
- Touch the heated seat icon to control the heated seat (if equipped).
- Touch the cooled seat icon to control the cooled seat (if equipped).

C. **Fan speed:** Touch + or – to adjust fan speed.

D. **Recirculated air:** Touch to turn the recirculated air on or off which:

- May reduce the amount of time needed to cool down the interior.
- May help reduce odors from reaching the interior.
- Engages automatically when MAX A/C is selected.
- May be engaged manually in any airflow mode except defrost.
- May turn off in all airflow modes except MAX A/C to reduce fog potential.

E. **MAX A/C:** Touch to cool the vehicle with recirculated air. Touch again for normal A/C operation. MAX A/C:

- Distributes air through instrument panel vents.
- Is more economical and efficient than normal A/C mode.
- May help reduce odors from entering the vehicle.

F. **A/C:** Touch to turn the air conditioning on or off.

- Use with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.
- Engages automatically in MAX A/C, defrost and floor/defrost.

G. **AUTO:** Touch to engage automatic operation, then set the temperature using the temperature control. The system automatically controls:

- Fan speed
- Airflow distribution
- A/C on or off
- Outside or recirculated air

H. **Rear defroster:** Touch to turn the rear window defroster and heated mirrors (if equipped).

I. **Defrost:** Touch to clear the windshield of fog and thin ice. Touch again to return to the previous airflow selection. When on, defrost:

- Provides outside air to reduce window fogging.
- Distributes air through the windshield defroster vents and demister vents.

J. **Manual controls:** Select any of the following airflow distribution modes:

- Floor/Defrost: Distributes air through the windshield defroster vents, demister vents, floor vents and rear seat floor vents, and provides outside air to reduce window fogging.
- Panel: Distributes air through the instrument panel vents.
- Panel/Floor: Distributes air through the instrument panel vents, demister vents, floor vents and rear seat floor vents.
- Floor: Distributes air through the demister vents, floor vents and rear seat floor vents.

K. **Driver settings:** Depending on your vehicle and option package, you may have the following features:

- Touch + or – to adjust the temperature.
- Touch the heated seat icon to control the heated seat (if equipped). See the *Seats* chapter.
- Touch the cooled seat icon to control the cooled seat (if equipped). See the *Seats* chapter.
- Touch and hold MyTemp to select a temperature you would like the vehicle to remember and maintain for you.
- Touch the heated steering wheel icon (if equipped) to warm the steering wheel.

Note: If your vehicle is equipped with a wood-trimmed steering wheel, it does not heat between the 10 o'clock and 2 o'clock positions.

Climate Control Voice Commands



The following voice commands are available at the main menu level of a voice session. For example, press the voice button and after the prompt, “Say a command”; say any of the following commands:

Climate Control Voice Commands
“Climate automatic”
“Climate my temperature”
“Climate off”
“Climate on”
“Climate temperature <15.5–29.5> degrees”
“Climate temperature <60–85> degrees”
“Help”

There are additional climate control commands but in order to access them, you have to say “Climate” first, then when the system is ready to listen, you may say any of the following commands:

Additional Climate Control Voice Commands	
“Automatic”	“Panel floor on”
“A/C off”	“Panel on”
“A/C on”	“Rear defrost off”
“Defrost off”	“Rear defrost on”
“Defrost on”	“Recirc off”
“Dual off”	“Recirc on”
“Fan decrease”	“Temperature”*
“Fan increase”	“Temperature <15.5–29.5> degrees”
“Floor on”	“Temperature <60–85> degrees”
“Max A/C off”	“Temperature decrease”
“Max A/C on”	“Temperature high”
“My temp”	“Temperature increase”
“Off”	“Temperature low”
“On”	“Windshield floor on”
“Help”	

*If you have said “Temperature”, you can say any of the commands in the following “Temperature” chart.

“TEMPERATURE”
“High”
“Low”
“<15.5–29.5> degrees”
“<60–85> degrees”
“Help”

NAVIGATION SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

Note: The navigation SD card must be in the SD card slot to operate the navigation system. If you need a replacement SD card, see your authorized dealer.

Note: The SD card slot is spring-loaded. To remove the SD card, just push the card in and release it. Do not attempt to pull the card out to remove it; this could cause damage.

Your navigation system is comprised of two main features, destination mode and map mode.

To set a destination, press the green corner of your touchscreen, then the Dest button when it appears. See *Setting a destination*.

To view the navigation map and the vehicle’s current location, touch the green bar in the upper right hand corner of the touchscreen, or, press Dest > Map. See *Map mode*.

Setting a Destination

Press the green corner of your touchscreen, then the Dest button when it appears. Choose any of the following:

Destination Selections	
My Home	Street Address
Favorites	Intersection
Previous Destinations	City Center
Point of Interest	Map
Emergency	Edit Route Cancel Route
Previous Starting Point	Freeway Entrance/Exit
Latitude/Longitude	

1. Enter the necessary information into the highlighted text fields (in any order). For address destination entry, the Go! button appears once all the necessary information has been entered. Pressing the Go! button makes the address location to appear on the map. If you choose Previous Destination, the last 20 destinations you have selected appear.
2. Select Set as Dest to make this your destination. You can also choose to set this as a waypoint (have the system route to this point on the way to your current destination) or save it as a favorite. Any Avoid Areas selections are also considered in route calculation.
3. Choose from up to three different types of routes, then select Start Route.
 - Fastest: Uses the fastest moving roads possible.
 - Shortest: Uses the shortest distance possible.
 - Eco (EcoRoute): Uses the most fuel efficient route.

You can cancel the route or have the system demo the route for you. Select Route Prefs to set route preferences like avoiding freeways, toll roads, ferries and car trains as well as to use or not use HOV lanes. (HOV lanes are High Occupancy Vehicle lanes also known as carpool or diamond lanes. These lanes are reserved for people who ride in buses, vanpools or carpools.)

Note: If Start Route button is not pressed and the vehicle is driven on a recognized road, the system defaults to the fastest route option and begins guidance.

During route guidance, the “talking bubble” icon that appears in the upper right navigation corner (green bar) can be pressed if the user wants the system to repeat a route guidance instruction. Instructions decrease with each press.

POI Categories

Your system offers a variety of POI (Points of Interest) categories.

Main Categories	
Food/Drink & Dining	Automotive
Travel & Transportation	Shopping
Financial	Entertainment & Arts
Emergency	Recreation & Sports
Community	Government
Health & Medicine	Domestic Services

Within these main categories, there are subcategories which contain more listings:

Subcategories
Restaurant
Golf
Parking
Home & Garden
Personal Care Services
Automobile Dealership
Govt. Office
Public Transit
Education

To expand these listings, press the + in front of the POI listing.

The system also allows you to sort the POIs alphabetically, by distance or by cityseekr listings (if available).

cityseekr (If Available)

Note: cityseekr point of interest (POI) information is limited to approximately 154 cities (132 in the U.S., 13 in Canada and 9 in Mexico).



cityseekr is a service which provides additional information about certain POIs, such as restaurants, hotels and attractions.

When you have selected a POI, the location and information appear, such as address and phone number. If the POI is listed with cityseekr, you also see information, such as a brief description, check-in and check-out times, when the restaurant is open, etc.

Press More Information for a longer review, a list of services and facilities, the average room or meal price as well as the website link.

This screen displays the POI icon, such as:



Hotel



Coffeehouse



Food & Drink



Nightlife



Attraction



This icon appears when your selection exists in multiple categories within the system.

When you are viewing additional information for hotels, cityseekr also tells you if the hotel has certain services and facilities using icons:

Hotel Services and Facilities	
Restaurant	24 Hr Room Service
Business Center	Fitness Center
Handicap Facilities	Internet Access
Laundry	Pool
Refrigerator	Wi-Fi

For restaurants, cityseekr can provide information, such as star rating, average cost, review, handicap access, hours of operation, and website address.

For hotels, cityseekr can provide information, such as star rating, price category, review, check-in and check-out times, hotel service icons and website address.

Setting Your Navigation Preferences

Select settings for the system to take into account when planning your route.



Press the Settings icon > Settings > Navigation.

When you select:	You can:
Map Preferences	Turn breadcrumbs on and off.
	Have the system display your turn list top to bottom or bottom to top.
	Set the automatic parking POI notification. When parking POI notification is on, parking POI icons display on the map when you get close to your destination. (This may not be very useful in dense areas, and may clutter the map if other POIs are also set for display.)

When you select:	You can:
Route Preferences	Choose to have the system display the shortest route, fastest route or most ecological route.
	Avoid freeways, toll roads, ferries and car trains when planning your route.
	Use high-occupancy vehicle (HOV) lanes (if available).
Navigation Preferences	Choose prompts to be either voice or tone only.
	Have the system automatically fill in the state and province based on the information already entered into the system.
Traffic Preferences	<p>Choose how you want the system to handle traffic problems along your route.</p> <p>Automatic: Have the system reroute you to avoid traffic incidents that develop and impact the current route (no notification is provided).</p> <p>Manual: Have the system always provide a traffic alert notification for traffic incidents along the planned route. You have a choice to accept or ignore the notification before the route deviation is made.</p>
	Turn on certain, or all, traffic icons on the map (road work, incidents, accidents, closed roads, etc.).
Avoid Areas	<p>Choose areas which you want the system to avoid when calculating a route for you. Press Add to select a category.</p> <p>Once you make a selection, the system tries to avoid the area(s) if possible for all routes. To delete a selection, choose the listing on the screen; when the screen changes to Avoid Areas Edit, press Delete at the bottom right of the screen.</p>

Map Mode

Press the green bar in the upper right area of the touchscreen to view map mode. Map mode shows advanced viewing comprised of both 2D city maps as well as 3D landmarks (when available).

2D city maps show detailed outlines of buildings, visible land use and land elements and detailed railway infrastructure for the most essential cities around the globe. These maps also contain features, such as town blocks, building footprints, and railways.

3D landmarks appear as clear, visible objects which are typically recognizable and have a certain tourist value. The 3D landmarks appear in 3D map mode only. Coverage varies, and improves with updated map releases.



Change the appearance of the map display by repeatedly pressing the arrow button in the upper left corner of the screen. It toggles between three different map modes; Heading up, North up, and 3D.



Heading up (2D map) always shows the direction of forward travel to be upward on the screen. This view is available for map scales up to 2.5 mi (4 km). For larger map scales, this setting is remembered, but the map is shown in North up only. If the scale returns below this level, then Heading up is restored.



North up (2D map) always shows the northern direction to be upward on the screen.



3D map mode provides an elevated perspective of the map. This viewing angle can be adjusted and the map can be rotated 180 degrees by dragging your finger along the shaded bar with arrows at the bottom of the map.



Re-centering the map can be done by pressing this icon whenever you scroll the map away from your vehicle's current location.

Map Icons

Vehicle mark shows current location of the vehicle. It stays in the center of the map display, except when in scroll mode.



Scroll cursor allows you to scroll the map; the icon is fixed in the center of the screen. The map position closest to the cursor is in a window on the top center part of the screen.



Address book entry default icon(s) indicate the location on the map of an address book entry. This is the default symbol shown after the entry has been stored to the Address Book by any method other than the map. A different icon can be selected from the 22 icons available; each icon can be used more than once.



Home indicates the location on the map currently stored as the home position. Only one entry from the Address Book can be saved as Home. This icon cannot be changed.



POI (Point Of Interest) icons can be displayed on the map and can be turned on or off. There are about 56 subcategories of POIs that can be selected to be displayed on the map one at a time.



Starting point indicates the starting point of a planned route.



Waypoints indicates the location of a waypoint on the map. The number inside the circle is different for each waypoint and represents the position of the waypoint in the route list.



Destination symbol indicates the ending point of a planned route.



Next maneuver point indicates the location of the next turn on the planned route.



No GPS symbol indicates that insufficient GPS satellite signals are available for accurate map positioning. This icon may be intermittently displayed under normal operation in an area with poor GPS access.

Quick-touch Buttons

When in map mode, touch anywhere on the map display to access the following options:

When you select:	You can:
Set as Dest	Select a scrolled location on the map as your destination. (You may scroll the map by pressing your index finger on the map display. When you reach the desired location, simply let go and then press Set as Dest.)
Set as Waypoint	Set the current location as a waypoint.
Save to Favorites	Save the current location to your favorites.
POI Icons On/Off	Select POI icons to be displayed on the map. Up to three icons can be selected for display on the map at the same time.
Cancel Route	Cancel the active route.
View/Edit Route	Access these features when a route is active: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • View route • Edit destination/waypoints • Edit turn list • Detour • Edit route preferences • Edit traffic preferences • Cancel route



Rotate the map view by swiping your finger across the shaded bar with the arrows.

Navteq is the digital map provider for the navigation application. If you find map data errors, you may report them directly to Navteq by going to <http://mapreporter.navteq.com>. Navteq evaluates all reported map errors and responds with the result of their investigation by e-mail.

Navigation Map Updates

Annual navigation map updates are available for purchase through your dealership, by calling 1-800-NAVMAPS (in Mexico, call 01-800-557-5539) or going to www.navigation.com/ford. You need to specify the make and model of your vehicle to determine if there is an update available.

Navigation Voice Commands



When in navigation mode, press the voice button on the steering wheel control. After the tone, say any of the following commands:

Navigation System Voice Commands	
“Cancel next waypoint” ¹	“Navigation” ³
“Cancel route” ¹	“Repeat instruction” ¹
“Destination” ²	“Show 3D”
“Destination <nametag>”	“Show heading up”
“Destination <POI category>”	“Show map”
“Destination favorites”	“Show north up”
“Destination home”	“Show route” ¹
“Destination intersection”	“Show turn list” ¹
“Destination nearest <POI category>”	“Voice off”
“Destination nearest POI”	“Voice on”
“Destination play nametags”	“Voice volume decrease”
“Destination POI”	“Voice volume increase”
“Destination POI category”	“Where am I?”
“Destination previous destination”	“Zoom in”
“Destination street address”	“Zoom out”
“Detour” ¹	“Help”

¹These commands are only available when a navigation route is active.

²If you have said the command, “Destination”, you may say any of the above commands or commands in the following Destination chart.

³If you have said the command, “Navigation”, you may say any of the above commands or commands in the following Navigation chart.

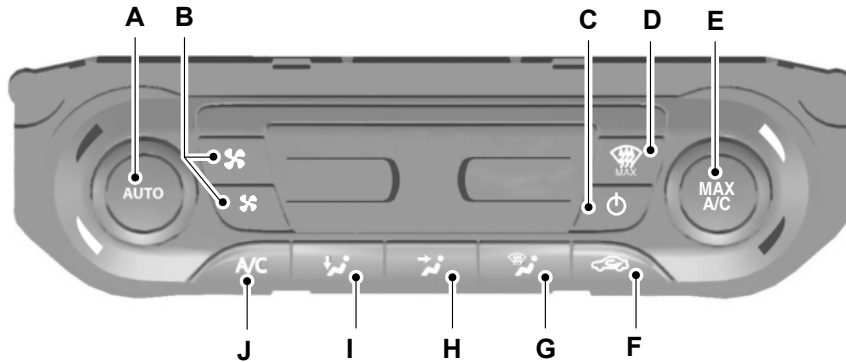
“DESTINATION”
“<nametag>”
“<POI category>”
“Favorites”
“Home”
“Intersection”
“Nearest <POI category>”
“Nearest POI”
“Play nametags”
“POI category”
“Previous destination”
“Street address”
“Help”
“NAVIGATION”
“Destination”*
“Zoom city”
“Zoom country”
“Zoom in minimum”
“Zoom out maximum”
“Zoom province”
“Zoom state”
“Zoom street”
“Zoom to <distance>”
“Help”

*If you have said, “Destination”, you may say any of the commands in the Destination chart.

One-shot Destination Street Address

If your vehicle is equipped with the SD card navigation feature, you have the ability to enter in a street address using a feature called one-shot destination street address. When you say either “Navigation destination street address” or “Destination street address”, the system asks you to say the full address. The system displays an example on-screen. You can then speak the address naturally, such as “One two three four Main Street, Anytown”.

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL



A. **AUTO:** Press to select automatic operation. The system automatically controls the temperature, amount and distribution of the airflow to reach and maintain your previously selected temperature.

B. **Fan speed:** Controls the volume of air circulated in your vehicle. Press to select the desired fan speed. The setting is shown in the display.

C. **On and off button:** Press to switch the system on and off.

D. **MAX Defrost:** Press to distribute outside air through the windshield air vents. Air conditioning is automatically selected. The fan is set to the highest speed and the temperature to HI. When the air distribution is set in this position, you are unable to select recirculated air or manually adjust the fan speed and temperature control. Press the AUTO button to return to auto mode.

E. **MAX A/C:** Press to distribute maximum air conditioning through the instrument panel air vents. This mode is more economical and efficient than normal air conditioning.

F. **Recirculated air:** Press to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

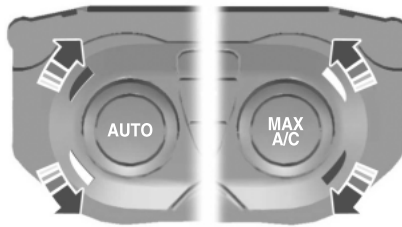
G. **Defrost:** Press to distribute air through the windshield air vents. You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

H. **Instrument panel:** Press to distribute air through the instrument panel air vents.

I. **Footwell:** Press to distribute air through the footwell air vents.

J. **Air conditioning:** Press to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve air conditioning when starting your vehicle, drive with the windows slightly open for two to three minutes.

Temperature Control



You can set the temperature between 60°F (15.5°C) and 85°F (29.5°C) in 1°F (0.5°C) increments. In position LO, 59°F (15°C), the system switches to permanent cooling. In position HI, 86°F (30°C), the system switches to permanent heating.

Note: If you select either position LO or HI, the system does not regulate a stable temperature.

Mono Mode

In this mode, the temperature settings for both the driver's side and passenger's side are linked. If you adjust the setting using the rotary control on the driver's side, the system adjusts the temperature on the passenger side.

Switching Mono Mode Off

Select a temperature for the passenger's side using the rotary control on the passenger's side. Mono mode automatically switches off. The temperature on the driver's side remains unchanged. You can now adjust the driver's side and passenger's side temperatures independently of each other. The temperature settings for each are shown in the display.



Switching Mono Mode Back On

Press and hold the AUTO button. The passenger's side temperature is adjusted to the driver's side temperature setting.

Operating Tips

- To reduce fog build-up on the windshield during humid weather, select defrost.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside the vehicle, avoid driving with the system switched off unless a window can be opened to help circulate fresh air.
- Do not put objects under the front seats that will interfere with the airflow to the back seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the A/C cool down, drive with the windows open for approximately 2–3 minutes after starting the vehicle or until the vehicle has “aired out.”
- The A/C system is used to cool both the interior of the vehicle and the high voltage battery. In hot outside temperatures, interior cooling may be temporarily reduced if the high voltage battery requires cooling. Keep the vehicle plugged in (when possible) to allow automatic battery cooling in high temperature conditions.
- Interior heating is done by an electrical heater. Set the fan at a lower speed to get a warmer outlet temperature on cold days.
- A small amount of air may be felt from the floor vent regardless of the air distribution setting that is selected.

Maximum Cooling Performance

1. Press MAX A/C. The system defaults to single zone operation and the coldest temperature setting. LO appears in the display.
2. A/C,  and  will be selected.
3. Fan speed will be increased to the highest speed, but can be adjusted as desired.

Side Window Defogging or Defrosting

1. Select air distribution through the floor vent.



2. Select air distribution through the panel vent.

3. Select A/C.

4. Adjust the temperature control to maintain comfort.

5. Set the fan to the highest speed.

6. Direct the outer instrument panel vents toward the side windows.

To increase airflow to the outer instrument panel vents, close the vents located in the middle of the instrument panel.

Improving Vehicle Drive Range

Your vehicle is equipped with a high voltage electric compressor and a high voltage electric heater. You can increase your driving range by minimizing the amount of energy expended to cool or heat the interior during the drive.

- Press the brake pedal and power button while the vehicle is charging to switch the climate control system on. This is beneficial because it draws as much power as possible from the wall charge and not the high voltage battery.
- Pre-condition the interior temperature during vehicle charging reduces the battery energy use on the interior comfort and improves range. See *Convenience charging with MyFord mobile* in the *Charging Your High Voltage Battery* chapter.
- Hot and cold temperatures make your vehicle use more energy to achieve and maintain a comfortable interior temperature. Park the vehicle in the shade or in a parking structure when hot, and in a garage when cold.
- Consider opening a window (or windows) to let fresh air circulate, if weather conditions permit. Maximum energy savings can be achieved by switching the climate system off. Do this only if conditions exist for safe vehicle operation.
- Reduce fan speed.
- Set the AUTO temperature a couple degrees cooler than you normally do on cold days and a couple degrees higher on hot days. Use the heated seats on cold days to increase interior comfort.
- Switch the air conditioning system off in mild temperatures or low humidity conditions.

- Defrost mode automatically turns the air conditioning on to dehumidify the air, and cannot be switched off. If defogging or defrosting is not necessary, select a non-defrost mode and disengage air conditioning to extend vehicle range.
- Air conditioning and heating functions are automatically switched off (unless in defrost mode) when driving distance to empty is zero miles (zero km). The interior fan continues to operate, however.


Touchscreen Features

Your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen system. You can access climate features using the touchscreen and voice commands. Refer to *Touchscreen climate controls* in the *MyFord Touch*® chapter for more information.

REAR WINDOW DEFROSTER

Note: The vehicle must be in Ready to Drive for this feature to work.

The rear window defroster control is located on the climate control panel and works to clear the rear window of fog and thin ice.

Press  to turn the rear window defroster on. An indicator light on the control will illuminate when active. The rear window defroster turns off automatically after a predetermined amount of time, if a low battery condition is detected or when the ignition is turned off or to the accessory position. To manually turn off the rear window defroster at any time, press the control again.

If your vehicle is equipped with both rear defroster and heated mirrors, the same control will activate both. Refer to *Heated outside mirrors* in the *Driver Controls* chapter.

Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean the inside of the rear window or to remove decals from the inside or the rear window. This may cause damage to the heated grid lines and will not be covered by your warranty.

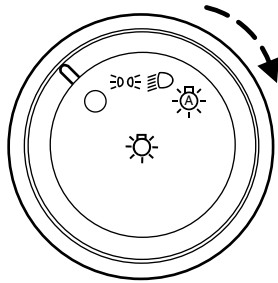
CABIN AIR FILTER

Note: A cabin air filter must be installed at all times to prevent foreign objects from entering the system. Running the system without a filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system.

Your cabin air filter is located in the passenger foot well area. The cabin air filter element is designed to reduce the concentration of airborne particles such as dust, spores and pollen in the air being supplied to the interior of the vehicle. The presence of a particulate filter element provides the following benefits:

- Improves your driving comfort by reducing particle concentration.
- Improves the interior compartment cleanliness.
- Protects the climate control components from particle deposits.

For replacement intervals regarding the cabin air filter, see the *Scheduled Maintenance* chapter. For more information regarding your filter, see your authorized dealer.

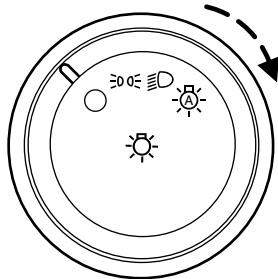
HEADLAMP CONTROL

○ Turns the lamps off.

☰☺☻ Turns on the parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps.

☰☺ Turns the headlamps on.

Note: The head lamp indicator will illuminate when the head lamps are activated.

Autolamp control (if equipped)

The autolamp system provides light sensitive automatic on-off control of the exterior lights normally controlled by the headlamp control.

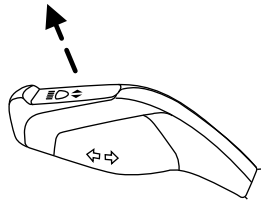
- To turn autolamps on, rotate the control to ☰☺☻ .
- To turn autolamps off, rotate the control from the autolamp position.

Note: If the vehicle is equipped with autolamps, it will have the *windshield wiper rainlamp feature*. When the windshield wipers are turned to low- or high-speed wiping during daylight, and the headlamp control is in the autolamp position, the exterior lamps will turn on after a brief delay and will remain on until the wipers are turned off.

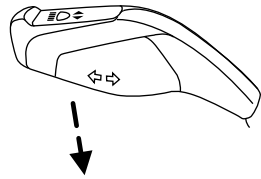
Autolamp delay system (if equipped)

If your vehicle is equipped with autolamps, you can set the delay time to keep the headlights on for up to one minute after the key is turned off. The home light delay settings are adjusted through the message center in the instrument cluster. The default delay time from the factory is set to 20 seconds.

Note: The headlamps can be activated manually by pulling the high beam/flash-to-pass lever toward you. The headlamps are deactivated after 30 seconds or three minutes if any door is open.

High beams

- Push the lever toward the instrument panel to activate.
- Push the lever toward the instrument panel again or pull the lever towards you to deactivate.

Flash-to-pass

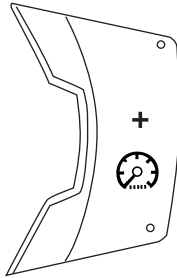
Pull toward you slightly to activate and release to deactivate.

DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS (DRL) (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING: Always remember to turn on your headlamps in low light situations or during inclement weather. The system does not activate the tail lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during these conditions. Failure to activate your headlamps under these conditions may result in a collision.

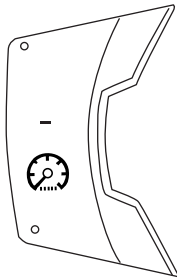
The system turns the headlamps on.

To switch the system on, switch the vehicle to Ready to Drive mode and switch the headlamp control to the off or parking lamp position.

PANEL DIMMER CONTROL

Use to adjust the brightness of the instrument panel and all applicable lit components in the vehicle during headlamp and parking lamp operation.

- Tap the right control to brighten all interior lit components incrementally, or
- Press and hold the right control until the desired lighting level is reached.
- Tap the left control to dim all interior lit components incrementally, or
- Press and hold the left control until the desired lighting level is reached.



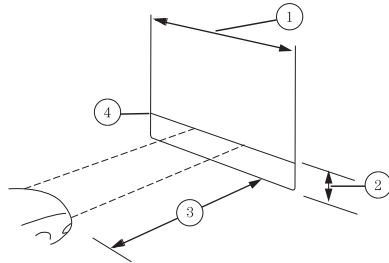
Note: If the low voltage battery under the hood is disconnected, discharged, or a new low voltage battery is installed, the dimmer will set the illuminated components to the maximum setting automatically. This will ensure that your displays are visible under all lighting conditions. The brightness can then be adjusted to the users preference.

AIMING THE HEADLAMPS

The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant. If your vehicle has been in an accident, the alignment of your headlamps should be checked by your authorized dealer.

Vertical aim adjustment

1. Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 feet (7.6 meters) away.

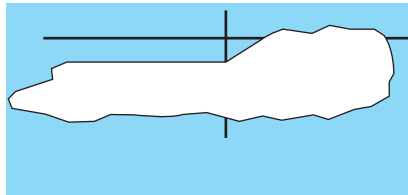


- (1) 8 feet (2.4 meters)
- (2) Center height of lamp to ground
- (3) 25 feet (7.6 meters)
- (4) Horizontal reference line

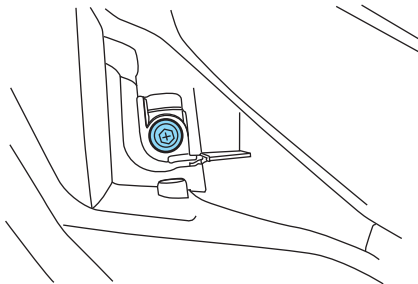
2. Measure the height of the headlamp bulb center from the ground and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height.

3. Turn on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood.

To see a clearer light pattern for adjusting, you may want to block the light from one headlamp while adjusting the other.



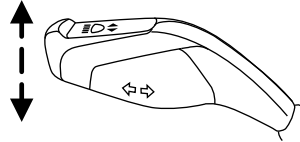
There is a distinct cut-off (change from light to dark) in the left portion of the beam pattern. The top edge of this cut-off should be positioned two inches (5 cm) below the horizontal reference line.



4. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Using a Phillips #2 screwdriver or 13 millimeter wrench/socket, turn the adjuster either clockwise or counterclockwise in order to adjust the vertical aim of the headlamp.

5. Close the hood and turn off the lamps.

HORIZONTAL AIM IS NOT REQUIRED FOR THIS VEHICLE AND IS NOT ADJUSTABLE.

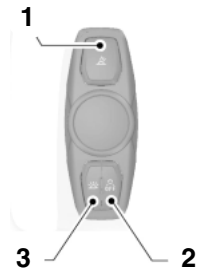
TURN SIGNAL CONTROL

- Push down to activate the left turn signal.
- Push up to activate the right turn signal.

Lane change

To indicate a left or right lane change:

- Tap the lever up/down. The turn signals will flash three times and stop.
- Push the lever up/down to the non latched position and hold. The turn signals will flash for as long as the lever is held in this position.

INTERIOR LAMPS**Front dome/map lamp**

1. Map lamp on and off switch
2. Door function switch
3. All lamps on and off switch

The dome lamp will turn on when:

- any door is opened.
- the remote entry controls are pressed and the vehicle is off.
- switch 3 on the dome lamp is pressed.


Press switch 1 to activate the map lamp(s). Some map lamps have a split switch.

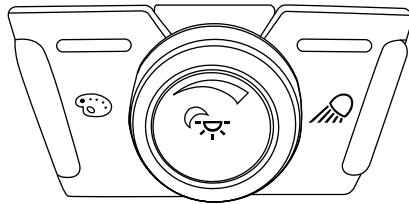
Note: Press switch 2 to disable all courtesy/door illumination when the door is open. Press the switch again to re-enable.

Rear dome/map lamp (if equipped)

The dome lamp will turn on when:

- any door is opened.
- any of the remote entry controls are pressed and the vehicle is off.
- switch 3 on the front dome/map lamp is pressed.

Press  to manually turn on the map lamp(s) (if equipped):

Ambient lighting (if equipped)

Illuminates the interior with a choice of several colors. The ambient lighting control switch is located in the overhead console.

- Rotate the control knob past the first detent to activate and adjust to the desired brightness.
- Press the left color pallet switch to cycle through the color choices.
- Press the right search mode switch to activate all dome lamps and all ambient lighting. Press the search mode switch again to deactivate the dome lamps and return the ambient lighting to the previously selected color.

The ambient lights come on whenever the vehicle is on, the headlamps are on and the outside ambient light level is low.

Note: The ambient lights will stay on until the vehicle is turned off and the vehicle is locked or the accessory delay timer expires.

BULB REPLACEMENT**Lamp Assembly Condensation**

Exterior lamps are vented to accommodate normal changes in pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that

condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a thin film of mist can form on the interior of the lens. The thin mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation. Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

These are examples of acceptable condensation:

- Presence of thin mist (no streaks, drip marks or droplets).
- Fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

These are examples of unacceptable moisture (usually caused by a lamp water leak):

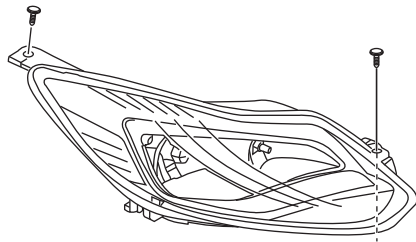
- Water puddle inside the lamp.
- Large water droplets, drip marks or streaks present on the interior of the lens.

Take your vehicle to a dealer for service if any of the above conditions of unacceptable moisture are present.

Using the right bulbs

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. Headlamp bulbs must be marked with an authorized “D.O.T.” for North America to ensure lamp performance, light brightness and pattern and safe visibility. The correct bulbs will not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and will provide quality bulb burn time.

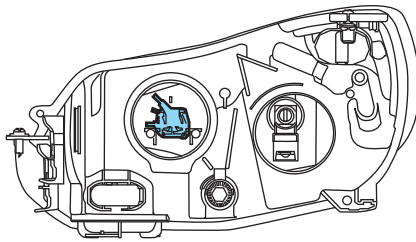
Function	Trade number
Headlamps high beam	H1
* Headlamp low beam (HID)	D8S
Parking lamp/turn signal lamp (front)	W21W
* Side marker lamp (front)	LED
Brake lamp	3157K
Tail lamp	3157K
Turn lamp	3757AK
Reverse lamp	921
* License plate lamp	LED
* High-mount brake lamp	LED
* To replace these lamps - see your authorized dealer.	
To replace all instrument panel lights - see your authorized dealer	

Replacing headlamp bulbs

1. Make sure the headlamp control is in the off position.
2. Open the hood.
3. Remove the two screws from the headlamp assembly.
4. Carefully pull the headlamp assembly up and away from the vehicle.

Low beam headlamp bulb:

The low beam headlamps on your vehicle use a “high intensity discharge” (HID) source. These lamps operate at a high voltage. When the bulb is burned out, the bulb and starter capsule assembly must be replaced by your authorized dealer.

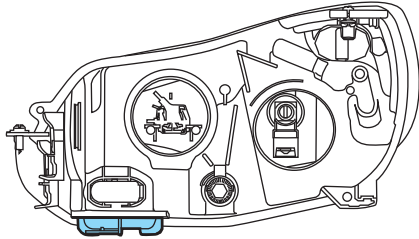
**High beam headlamp bulb:**

- Remove service cap.
- Remove bulb by removing the electrical wire connector (lift up on the bottom latch).



WARNING: Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children’s reach. Grasp the bulb by only its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time the headlamps are operated.

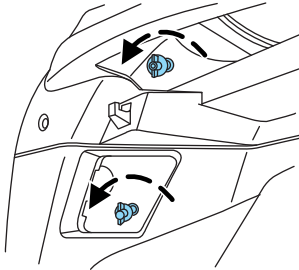
Note: If the bulb is accidentally touched, it should be cleaned with rubbing alcohol before being used.

Replacing front parking lamp/turn signal bulbs:

- Remove service cap on the bottom of the lamp by turning it counterclockwise
- Remove the bulb socket from the headlamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise.

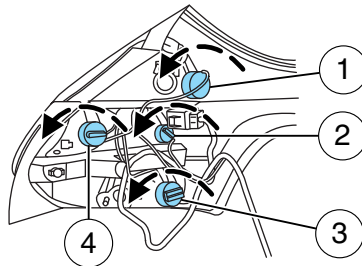
Replacing side marker bulbs:

Your vehicle is equipped with an LED side marker bulb. It is designed to last the life of the vehicle. If replacement is required, it is recommended that you see your authorized dealer.

Replacing rear lamps

1. Make sure the headlamp control is in the off position.
2. Open the trunk.
3. Remove the trim panel from inside the luggage compartment.
4. Remove the two nuts from the lamp assembly.

5. Gently pull the lamp assembly away from the vehicle.
6. Remove bulbs by turning the bulb socket counterclockwise. Gently pull the bulb straight out of the socket.



- Brake lamp (1)
- Reverse lamp (2)
- Tail lamp (3)
- Turn signal (4)

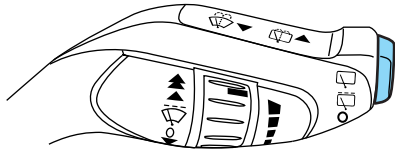
Install the new bulb in reverse order.

Replacing license plate lamp assembly


Your vehicle is equipped with an LED license plate lamp assembly. It is designed to last the life of the vehicle. If replacement is required, it is recommended that you see your authorized dealer.

Replacing high-mount brake lamp assembly

Your vehicle is equipped with an LED center high-mount stop lamp. It is designed to last the life of the vehicle. If replacement is required, it is recommended that you see your authorized dealer.

WINDSHIELD WIPERS

Move the lever down for a single wipe.

 Move the control up one position for intermittent operation. Adjust the rotary control to the desired speed.

Move the control up two positions for low-speed wiping or three positions for high-speed wiping.

The wipers may be moved manually with the vehicle off. They may automatically return to their normal position when the vehicle is turned on.

When wiping on dry glass, the wipers may switch to the next lower operating mode (low-speed or intermittent). The previous operation mode may resume after the windshield becomes wet again.

Rain-Sensing Wipers (If Equipped)


The rain-sensing wipers will automatically activate when moisture is present on the windshield and control is intermittent operation position. Adjust the rotary control to the desired moisture sensitivity settings. The speed of the rain-sensitive wipers will vary based on the amount of moisture detected on the windshield and the sensitivity setting. There are no interval (intermittent wipe) settings on vehicles with rain-sensing wipers. The wipers will continue to wipe as long as the presence of moisture is detected on the windshield. More or less wiping may occur depending on humidity, mist or light rain, or road spray.

Keep the outside of the windshield clean, especially the area around the rear view mirror where the sensor is located or rain sensor performance may be affected.

Note: During winter driving conditions with ice, snow or a salty road mist, inconsistent or unexpected wiping or smearing may occur. In these conditions, you can lower the sensitivity to reduce the amount of smearing or override the feature by selecting low- or high-speed wiping or turning the wiper system off.

Note: The wipers must be turned off before entering a car wash.

Windshield Washer

 Pull the control toward you to activate the windshield washer. Release the control to stop washer fluid spray. The wipers will operate for a short time after the washer is turned off.

Courtesy Wipe Feature

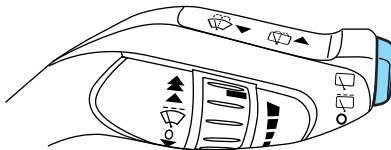
One extra wipe will happen a few seconds after washing the front window to clear any water that is dripping down from the top of the windshield caused by the washing.

Note: Do not operate the washer when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat. Check the washer fluid level frequently. Do not operate the wipers when the windshield is dry. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades and cause the wiper motor to burn out. Before operating the wiper on a dry windshield, always use the windshield washer. In freezing weather, be sure the wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield before operating the wipers.


Windshield wiper rainlamp feature (if equipped with autolamp)

When the windshield wipers are turned to low- or high-speed wiping during daylight, and the headlamp control is in the autolamp position, the exterior lamps will turn on after a brief delay and will remain on until the wipers are turned off.

Rear window wiper/washer




Wiper

 Press the top of the switch to the first position for intermittent operation.

Press the top of the switch to the second position for normal operation.

Press the bottom of the switch to turn off.

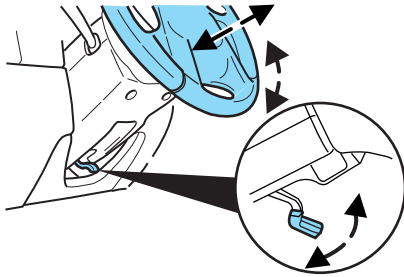
Washer

 Press the lever forward to operate the washer. The wiper will operate for a short time and will activate once more after pausing to clear the rear window.

The rear wiper will automatically turn on to intermittent when you shift into R (Reverse) if the front wipers are activated. This feature may be enabled or disabled in the information display.

TILT/TELESCOPE STEERING WHEEL

WARNING: Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving.



To adjust the steering wheel:

1. Pull the lever down to unlock the steering column.
2. While the lever is in the down position, move the steering wheel up or down and in or out until you find the desired position.
3. While holding the steering wheel in place, pull the lever up to its original position to lock the steering column.

SUN VISORS**Illuminated Visor Vanity Mirror**

Lift the cover to switch on the lamp.

CENTER CONSOLE

WARNING: Use only soft cups in the cupholder. Hard objects can injure you in a collision.

Your vehicle has a variety of console features. These may include:

- Cupholders
- Utility compartment
- Auxiliary AV connections, USB port, SD slot

AUXILIARY POWER POINTS

WARNING: Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigarette lighter socket (if equipped). Improper use of the lighter can cause damage not covered by your warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

Note: If used when the engine is not running, the battery will discharge. There may be insufficient power to restart your engine.

Note: Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This will damage the outlet and blow the fuse.

Note: Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug.

Note: Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volts DC 180 watts or a fuse may blow.

Note: Do not use the power point for operating a cigarette lighter element.

Note: Improper use of the power point can cause damage not covered by your warranty.

Note: Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.

Run the engine for full capacity use of the power point. To prevent the battery from being discharged:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the engine is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when the vehicle is parked for extended periods.

Locations

Power points may be found:

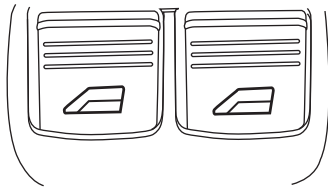
- on the center console
- on the rear of the center console.

POWER WINDOWS

WARNING: Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.



WARNING: When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and ensure that children and/or pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



Press or lift the switches to operate the windows.

- Press the switch to the first detent and hold to open the window.
- Lift the switch to the first detent and hold to close the window.

Rear Window Buffeting: When one or both of the rear windows are open, the vehicle may demonstrate a wind throb or buffeting noise. This noise can be alleviated by lowering a front window approximately 2–3 inches (5–8 centimeters).

One-touch up or down (all windows) (if equipped)

This feature allows the windows to open or close fully without holding the control down.

To operate one-touch down, press the switch completely down to the second detent and release quickly. The window will open fully. Momentarily press the switch to any position to stop the window operation.

To operate one-touch up, pull the switch completely up to the second detent and release quickly. The window will close fully. Momentarily press the switch to any position to stop the window operation.

Bounce-back (if equipped)

When an obstacle has been detected in the window opening as the window is moving upward, the window will automatically move down until the bounce-back position is reached.

Overriding the bounce-back feature

To override this protection function when there is a resistance, e.g. in the winter, proceed as follows:

1. Close the window twice until it reaches the resistance and let it reverse.
2. Close the window a third time to the resistance. The bounce-back function is disabled and you can close the window manually. The window will override the resistance and you can close it fully.

3. If the window does not close after the third attempt, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Resetting the bounce-back feature



WARNING: The bounce-back function is deactivated until you have reset the memory.

After the battery has been disconnected from the vehicle you must reset the bounce-back memory separately for each window:

1. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed, then release the switch.
2. Lift the switch again for one more second.
3. Press and hold the switch until the window is fully open, then release the switch.
4. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
5. Open the window and try to close it automatically.
6. Reset and repeat procedure if the window does not close automatically.

Window lock



The window lock feature allows only the driver and front passenger to operate the power windows.

To lock out all the window controls (except for the driver's and front passenger's) press the control. A light on the control will illuminate when the windows are locked. Press

the control again to restore the window controls.

Accessory Delay (If Equipped)

You can use the window switches for several minutes after the you switch the ignition off, or until either front door is opened.

INTERIOR MIRROR

WARNING: Do not adjust the mirror when your vehicle is moving.

Note: Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia based cleaning products.

You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. Some mirrors also have a second pivot point. This lets you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

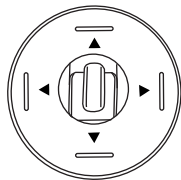
Auto-Dimming Mirror (If Equipped)

Note: Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. Mirror performance may be affected. A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.

The mirror will dim automatically to reduce glare when bright lights are detected from behind your vehicle. It will automatically return to normal reflection when you select reverse gear to make sure you have a clear view when backing up.

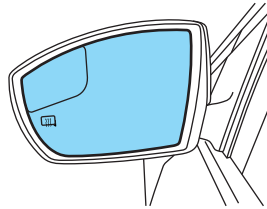
EXTERIOR MIRRORS**Power side view mirrors**

WARNING: Do not adjust the mirror while the vehicle is in motion.



To adjust your mirrors:

1. Move the center of the control right or left to select the mirror to adjust.
2. Press the arrows to adjust the mirror.
3. Return the control to the center position to lock mirrors in place.

Heated outside mirrors

Both mirrors are heated automatically to remove ice, mist and fog when the rear window defrost is activated.

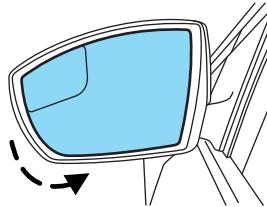
Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or attempt to readjust the mirror glass if it is frozen in place.

These actions could cause damage to the glass and mirrors.

Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

Signal Indicator Mirrors

When the turn signal is activated, the outer portion of the appropriate mirror housing will blink. This provides an additional warning to other drivers that your vehicle is about to turn.

Fold-Away Mirrors

Fold the side mirrors in carefully when driving through a narrow space, like an automatic car wash.

Blind Spot Mirrors

Your vehicle is equipped with blind spot mirrors. Refer to *Blind Spot Mirrors* in the *Driving* chapter.

SPEED CONTROL

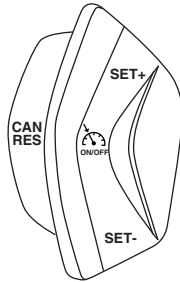
With speed control set, you can maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.



WARNING: Do not use the speed control in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, slippery or unpaved.

Using speed control

The speed controls are located on the steering wheel. The following buttons work with speed control:

**CAN (cancel)/RES (resume):**

Pull toward you to cancel or resume a set speed.


SET+: Press to set a speed or increase a set speed.

ON/OFF: Press to turn speed control on or off.

SET-: Press to decrease a set speed.

Setting speed control

To set speed control:

1. Press and release ON.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed.
3. Press and release SET+.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.
5. The indicator  light on the instrument cluster will turn on.

Note:

- Vehicle speed may vary momentarily when driving up and down a steep hill.
- If the vehicle speed increases above the set speed on a downhill, you may want to apply the brakes to reduce the speed.
- If the vehicle speed decreases more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below your set speed on an uphill, your speed control will disengage.

Disengaging speed control

Pull CAN toward you and release or tap the brake pedal. Disengaging the speed control will not erase previous set speed.

Resuming a set speed

Pull RES toward you and release. This will automatically return the vehicle to the previously set speed.

Increasing speed while using speed control

To set a higher speed:

- Press and hold SET+ until you get to the desired speed, then release. You can also use SET+ to operate the tap-up function. Press and release SET+ to increase the vehicle set speed in approximately 1 mph (2 km/h) increments.
- Use the accelerator pedal to get to the desired speed, then press and release SET+.

Reducing speed while using speed control

To reduce a set speed:

- Press and hold SET- until you get to the desired speed, then release. You can also use SET- to operate the tap-down function. Press and release SET- to decrease the vehicle set speed in approximately 1 mph (2 km/h) increments.
- Press the brake pedal until the desired vehicle speed is reached, then press and release SET+.

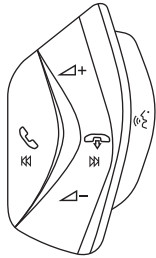
Turning off speed control


To turn off the speed control, press and release OFF or turn off the ignition.


Note: When you turn off the speed control or the ignition, your speed control set speed memory is erased.



STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS**Audio control features**

Press the arrow buttons on the right side of the steering wheel to scroll through various menu selections in the infotainment display. Press OK to select or deselect your choice.

**Hands-free control features**


Press  to activate phone mode or answer a phone call.

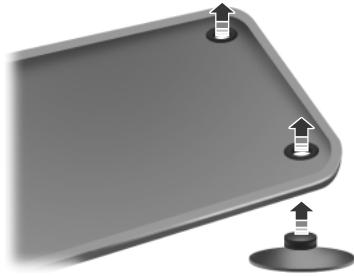
Press  to end call or exit phone mode.

Pull  toward you and release to use the voice command feature. You will hear a tone and LISTENING will appear in the radio display. Pull and hold  to exit voice command.

 **+ (Volume)**: Press to increase the volume.

 **- (Volume)**: Press to decrease the volume.

 **(Seek)**: Press to select the previous/next radio station preset, CD track or satellite radio channel preset (if equipped) depending on which media mode you are in.

Positive Retention Floor Mat

! **WARNING:** Always use floor mats that are designed to fit the foot well of your vehicle. Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed. Only use floor mats that are firmly secured to retention posts so that they cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

- Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.
- Always make sure that the floor mats are properly attached to the retention posts in the carpet that are supplied with your vehicle. Floor mats must be properly secured to both retention posts to ensure mats do not shift out of position.
- Never place floor mats or any other covering in the vehicle foot well that cannot be properly secured to prevent them from moving and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.
- Never place floor mats or any other covering on top of already installed floor mats. Floor mats should always rest on top of vehicle carpeting surface and not another floor mat or other covering. Additional floor mats or any other covering will reduce the pedal clearance and potentially interfere with pedal operation.
- Check attachment of floor mats on a regular basis. Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been removed for cleaning or replacement.
- Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while the vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

**WARNING** *(Continued)*

- Failure to properly follow floor mat installation or attachment instructions can potentially cause interference with pedal operation causing loss of control of vehicle.
- To install floor mats, position the floor mat so that the eyelet is over the retention post and press down to lock in.
- To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

TRUNK RELEASE

Press the button located on the instrument panel to the left of the steering wheel.

To open the trunk with the outside release button:



Press the release button located above the license plate if your vehicle is unlocked or if the intelligent access transmitter is within 3 feet (1 meter) of the trunk.

Note: If your vehicle is locked and you press the trunk button on the remote control once, you will have 20 seconds to press the outside release button.

CARGO MANAGEMENT SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The cargo management system consists of a storage compartment located in the cargo area.



The lid has two positions:

- Unlatched and flat (shown)
- Closed on an angle

Lift the lid and pull the handle on top of the lid toward you to fold down the supports. Lift the lid and push the handle away from you to fold the supports back under the lid.

INTELLIGENT ACCESS KEY (IA KEY)



Your vehicle is equipped with two intelligent access keys which operate the power locks and the remote entry system. You have to have the IA key in the vehicle to activate the push button start system.



The IA key also contains a removable mechanical key blade that can be used to unlock the driver door. To release the mechanical key blade, press the release buttons on the edge of the transmitter and remove the key blade.

Your IA keys are programmed to your vehicle. You cannot enter or start your vehicle with an unprogrammed key. If you lose one or both of your IA keys, replacements are available from your authorized dealer. For more information on programming replacement IA keys, refer to the *SecuriLock® passive anti-theft system* section in this chapter.



Note: Your vehicle’s IA backup keys were issued with a security tag that provides important vehicle key cut information. It is recommended that you keep the tag in a safe place for future reference.

MYKEY®

MyKey allows you to program keys with restricted driving modes to promote good driving habits. All but one of the keys programmed to the vehicle can be activated with these restricted modes. Any keys that have not been programmed are referred to as an “administrator key” or “admin key” which can be used to:

- create a restricted key
- program optional MyKey settings
- clear all MyKey features altogether.

Once a key has been programmed you can access the following information using the information display control:

- How many admin keys and MyKeys are programmed to the vehicle.
- The total distance the vehicle has been driven with a MyKey.

For vehicles equipped with Intelligent Access Key (push button start), when both a MyKey and an Admin Intelligent Access key (fob) are present, the admin fob will be recognized by the vehicle to start the vehicle.

Standard Settings

These settings cannot be changed.

- Belt-Minder. This cannot be disabled and the five-minute timer does not expire. The audio system is muted when MyKey Belt-Minder is activated.
- Early distance to stop. Warnings are displayed in the information display control followed by an audible tone at 15 miles to stop.
- Driver assist features, if equipped on your vehicle, are forced on: Parking aid, blind spot information system (BLIS) with cross traffic alert and the collision warning system.

Optional Settings

These settings can be configured right after a MyKey is first created or changed afterward with an admin key.

- Vehicle speed limit of 80 mph (130 km/h). Visual warnings are displayed followed by an audible tone when vehicle speed has reached 80 mph (130 km/h).
- Vehicle speed warning of 45, 55 or 65 mph (75, 90, or 105 km/h). Visual warnings are displayed followed by an audible tone when the preselected vehicle speed is exceeded.
- Audio system maximum volume of 45%. A message in the audio system is displayed when attempting to exceed the limited volume.
- AdvanceTrac. The system cannot be turned off when Always-on has been set.

Creating a MyKey

Use the information display control to create a MyKey

1. Hold the key next to the symbol on the right side of the steering column (or next to the back-up location on the right side of the steering column) refer to *Keyless starting* in the *Driving* chapter for backup slot location.
2. Turn the ignition on.

3. Access the main menu on the information display controls and select Settings, then MyKey by pressing OK or the > button.
4. Press OK to select Create.
5. When prompted, hold the OK button until you see a message informing you to label this key as a MyKey. The key will be restricted at the next start.

The key is successfully programmed. Make sure you label it so you can distinguish it from the admin keys.

To program optional settings for the key(s), refer to *Programming/changing optional settings*. If your vehicle is equipped with remote start, refer to *Using MyKey with remote start systems*.

Programming/Changing Optional Settings

Note: All programmed keys can be cleared within the same key cycle in which a key was programmed, otherwise an admin key is required to clear the keys. To clear all keys, refer to *Clear all MyKeys*.

You can access the optional settings through the information display control.

1. Turn the ignition on using an admin key.
2. Access the main menu and select Settings, then MyKey.
3. Use the arrow buttons to get to an optional feature.
4. Press OK or > to scroll through settings.
5. Press OK or > to make a selection.

Clearing All MyKeys

Note: All programmed MyKeys can be cleared within the same key cycle in which a MyKey was created, otherwise an admin key is required to clear the keys.

To clear all MyKeys (which removes all restrictions and returns them to admin key status), use the information display control to do the following:

1. Access the main menu and select Settings, then MyKey.
2. Scroll to Clear All and press the OK button.
3. Hold the OK button until ALL MYKEYS CLEARED is displayed.

Checking MyKey System Status

The information display control displays information about keys programmed to the vehicle:

- **MYKEY MILES:** Tracks mileage when a restricted key is used. If mileage does not accumulate as expected, then the key is not being

used by the intended user. The only way to reset this to zero is by resetting the keys. If the mileage is lower than the last time you checked, then the key system has been recently reset.

- **# MYKEY(S):** Indicates how many restricted keys are programmed to the vehicle. Can also be used to detect deletion of a restricted key.
- **# ADMIN KEY(S):** Indicates how many admin keys are programmed to the vehicle. Can also be used to detect if an additional key has been programmed to the vehicle.

Using MyKey with Remote Start Systems

MyKey is NOT compatible with non-Ford-approved aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system please see your Ford authorized dealer for a Ford-approved remote start system.

The following information MAY help customers who choose to use a non-Ford-approved remote start system. The actions provided below do NOT make MyKey compatible with non-Ford-approved remote start system, but it MAY help you to retain some MyKey functions.

Vehicles Equipped with Traditional Keys

When using a non-Ford-approved remote start system, the default settings may recognize the remote start system as an additional admin key with its associated privileges. This makes it NOT compatible with MyKey. Restart the vehicle when you insert a key into the ignition cylinder it may help you to retain some MyKey functions.

In addition to the key that has been programmed as a MyKey, owners of vehicles equipped with traditional keys have the option to program the non-Ford-approved remote start system as a MyKey if the remote start fob is used by the MyKey driver.

To program a non-Ford-approved remote start system as a MyKey, do the following:

1. Enter the vehicle and close all doors.
2. Remote start the vehicle using a non-Ford approved remote start fob.
3. Follow Steps 1-5 in the *Creating a MyKey* section.

Vehicles Equipped with Intelligent Access Key (Push Button Start)

Note: It is not possible to program the remote start system as a MyKey on vehicles equipped with intelligent access key (push button start). Therefore, you should treat the remote start fob as you would any other admin key. When the vehicle is started using remote start, the system will stall the vehicle when you either enter the vehicle or shift the vehicle into gear. Prior to the stall, the vehicle will have administrative

privileges. When you restart the vehicle, the vehicle will identify the user as an admin or MyKey driver depending on the settings of the actual key used to start the vehicle.

Note: For all vehicles, the number of MYKEY(S) PROGRAMMED or ADMIN KEYS PROGRAMMED that is displayed in the MyKey system status menus may include the non-Ford-approved remote start system as an additional key in the total count. See the *Checking system status* section.

For all vehicles with a non-Ford-approved remote start installed, it is possible to program all “real” keys as MyKeys, in which case, you will need to use your remote start system to clear all MyKeys (which removes all restrictions and returns them to admin key status) by doing the following:

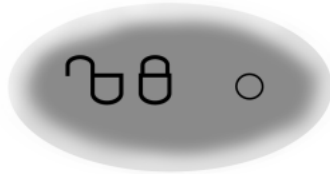
1. Enter the vehicle and close all doors.
2. Remote start the vehicle using your non-Ford-approved remote start fob.
3. Follow Steps 1-3 in the *Clearing all keys* section.

MyKey Troubleshooting

Condition	Potential Causes
I cannot program a key	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The key does not have admin privileges. • The key is the only admin key (there always has to be at least one admin key). • The intelligent access key is not held close enough to the steering column. • SecuriLock passive anti-theft system is disabled or in unlimited mode. • The vehicle has been started using a remote start system that is not programmed with admin privileges. Refer to <i>Using MyKey with remote start systems</i>.
I cannot program the optional settings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The key does not have admin privileges. • No keys are programmed to the vehicle. Refer to <i>Creating a MyKey</i>. • The vehicle has been started using a remote start system that is not programmed with admin privileges. Refer to <i>Using MyKey with remote start systems</i>.

Condition	Potential Causes
I cannot clear the restricted keys	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Key does not have admin privileges. • No restricted keys are programmed to the vehicle. Refer to <i>Creating a MyKey</i>. • The vehicle has been started using a remote start system that is not programmed with admin privileges. Refer to <i>Using MyKey with remote start systems</i>.
I lost the only admin key	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Purchase a new key from your authorized dealer.
I lost a key	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Program spare keys as outlined under <i>SecuriLock</i> in the <i>Security</i> chapter.
I accidentally programmed all keys as restricted keys	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The vehicle has a remote start system that is recognized as an admin key. Refer to the <i>Using MyKey with remote start systems</i> section to reset all restricted keys using remote start.
No restricted key functions with intelligent access key (push button start)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • An admin key is present at vehicle start-up. • No restricted keys are programmed to the vehicle. Refer to <i>Creating a MyKey</i>
Restricted key programmed total includes one additional key	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • An unknown key has been programmed to the vehicle as a restricted key. • The vehicle is equipped with a remote start system. Refer to <i>Using MyKey with remote start systems</i>.
Admin keys programmed total includes one additional key	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • An unknown key has been programmed to the vehicle as an admin key. • Vehicle is equipped with a remote start system. Refer to <i>Using MyKey with remote start systems</i>.
MyKey miles do not accumulate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The restricted key is not being used by the intended user. • The key system has been reset.

POWER DOOR LOCKS



The power door lock control is located on the instrument panel near the radio.

Press the control to lock or unlock the doors. When the light on the button is on it indicates that all doors and the luggage compartment are locked. When the light is off it indicates one or more doors are unlocked.

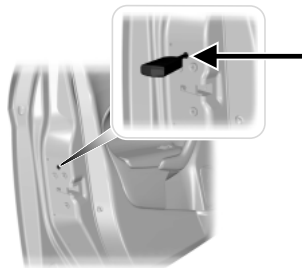
Rear Door Unlocking and Opening

Pull the interior door release handle twice to unlock and open the rear door. The first pull unlocks the door and the second pull will unlatch the door.

Central locking/unlocking

To centrally lock/unlock all doors (from the driver's side only) using the key from the outside when they are closed:

- Turn the key counterclockwise to lock all doors. The turn signal lamps will flash once.
- Turn the key clockwise to unlock all doors. The turn signal lamps will flash once.



If the central locking function fails to operate, the doors can be individually locked using the key in the position shown.

On the driver's side, turn the key clockwise to lock, and on the passenger's side turn the key counterclockwise to lock.

Autolock and Unlock (If Equipped)

The autolock feature will lock all the doors when:

- all doors are closed,
- the ignition is on,
- you shift into any gear putting the vehicle in motion, and
- the vehicle attains a speed greater than 4 mph (7 km/h).

When autounlock is enabled, all doors will unlock when the driver door is opened.

Enabling or Disabling Autolock and Autounlock

Note: Your authorized dealer can perform this procedure, or you can do the procedure yourself.

To enable or disable these features, do the following:

Note: You will have 30 seconds to complete the procedure.

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press the power door lock button three times.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Press the power door lock button three times.
5. Switch the ignition on. The horn will chirp indicating the programming mode has been entered.

Autolock: Once in programming mode, each subsequent short press (less than 1 second) of the power door lock button will toggle autolock between on and off.

Autounlock: Each subsequent long press (more than 2 seconds) of the power door lock button will toggle autounlock between on and off.

Note: The autounlock feature can be enabled or disabled independently of the autolock feature.

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS



- When these locks are set, the rear doors cannot be opened from the inside.
- The rear doors can be opened from the outside when the childproof door locks are set, but the doors are unlocked.

The childproof locks are located on the rear edge of each rear door and must be set separately for each door. Setting the lock for one door will not automatically set the lock for both doors.

- On the driver side, turn counterclockwise to lock and clockwise to unlock.
- On the passenger side, turn clockwise to lock and counterclockwise to unlock.

REMOTE ENTRY SYSTEM

FCC ID: LXP-RX4318	IC: 2298A-RX4318
--------------------	------------------

The intelligent access keys (IA key) comply with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 33 feet (10 meters). A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions,
- nearby radio towers,
- structures around the vehicle, or
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The transmitter allows you to:

- remotely unlock the vehicle doors.
- remotely lock all the vehicle doors.
- remotely open the trunk.

- arm and disarm the perimeter anti-theft system.
- activate the panic alarm.
- operate the illuminated entry feature.
- remotely start the vehicle.

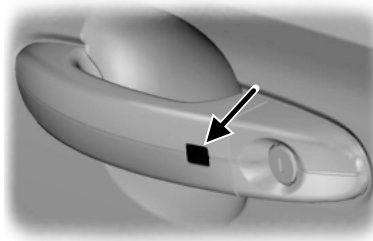
The remote entry lock/unlock feature operates in any power mode except when the vehicle is running and vehicle speed is more than 4 mph (7 km/h).

If there are problems with the remote entry system, make sure to take **ALL intelligent access keys** with you to the authorized dealer in order to aid in troubleshooting the problem.

Intelligent access

The intelligent access system uses a radio frequency (RF) signal to communicate with your vehicle and authorize your vehicle to unlock when commanded (either by touching the inside of any exterior door handle, the luggage compartment handle, or a button on the transmitter itself). If excessive RF interference is present in the area, or if your vehicle battery is low, it may be necessary to mechanically unlock your door. The mechanical key blade in your IA key can be used to open the driver's door in this situation (refer to *Intelligent access key* in this chapter for more information on the location and use of the mechanical key blade).

Your vehicle will allow you to unlock and enter your vehicle without actively using a key or transmitter. You can use the intelligent access feature at any door or at the liftgate. You can activate the intelligent access feature as long as you have one of your IA keys within range of the front doors or the liftgate.



Activating intelligent access at the doors: If your IA key is within 3 feet (1 meter) of the doors you can activate your intelligent access system by touching the inside of any exterior door handle. The door(s) will automatically unlock and the door can be opened.

To lock the doors, press the lock area (black spot) on either front door handle.



Activating intelligent access at the liftgate: If your IA key is within 3 feet (1 meter) of the liftgate, you can activate your intelligent access system by pressing the exterior liftgate release button, hidden under the trim above the license plate. The liftgate will release and open.

Unlocking the Doors (Two-Stage Unlock)



Press the button to unlock the driver's door. **Note:** The interior lamps and turn signal lamps will illuminate.

Press the button again within three seconds to unlock all doors. The turn signals will flash.

The remote entry system activates the illuminated entry feature; this feature turns on the lamps for 25 seconds or until the ignition is turned on.

The battery saver feature will turn off the lamps 10 minutes after the ignition is turned off.

Press and hold both the lock and unlock buttons on the remote control for four seconds to disable or enable two-stage unlocking. Disabling two-stage unlocking allows all vehicle doors to unlock with one press of the button. The turn signal lamps will illuminate twice to indicate that two-stage unlock was enabled or disabled. The unlocking mode will be applied to intelligent access.

Two-stage unlocking may also be disabled or enabled through the message center if this is an available message center option or by your authorized dealer. Refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

When two-stage unlocking is disabled, intelligent access at the driver's door results in an unlock of all doors (not just the driver door).

Locking the Doors



Press the button to lock all the doors. The turn signals will illuminate.

Press the button again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed. The doors will lock again, the horn will chirp and the turn signals will illuminate if all the doors and the luggage compartment are closed.

Note: If any door or the luggage compartment is not closed, or if the hood is not closed on vehicles equipped with a perimeter alarm or remote start, the horn will chirp twice and the lamps will not flash.

Car Finder



Press the button twice within three seconds. The horn will chirp and the turn signals will flash. It is recommended that this method be used to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

Sounding a Panic Alarm (If Equipped)

Note: The panic alarm will only operate when the ignition is off.



Press the button to activate the alarm. Press the button again or turn the ignition on to deactivate.

Opening the luggage compartment



Press twice to open the luggage compartment.

Ensure that the trunk is closed and latched before driving your vehicle. Failure to properly latch the trunk may cause objects to fall out or block the driver's rear view.

Replacing the Battery

Note: Refer to local regulations when disposing of transmitter batteries.

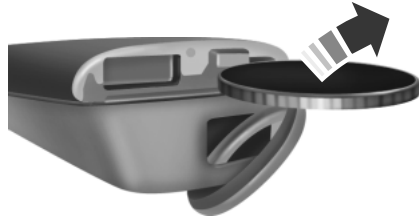
Note: Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

Note: Replacing the battery will not delete the transmitter from the vehicle. The transmitter should operate normally.

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

Intelligent Access Transmitter

1. Remove the backup key from the transmitter.



2. Twist a thin coin in the slot hidden behind the backup key slot to remove the battery cover.



3. Remove the old battery.

4. Insert the new battery with the + facing downward. Press the battery down to make sure it is fully in the housing.

5. Snap the battery cover back onto the transmitter and install the backup key.

Replacing lost remote entry transmitters

If you would like to have additional intelligent access keys programmed to your vehicle, please contact your authorized dealer.

Illuminated Entry

The interior lamps and select exterior lamps illuminate when the remote entry system is used to unlock the door(s).

The illuminated entry system will turn off the lights if:

- the ignition is on,
- the remote transmitter lock control is pressed, or
- after 25 seconds of illumination.

The lights will not turn off if:

- they have been turned on with the dimmer control, or
- any door is open.

Illuminated exit

The interior dome lamps and parking lamps will illuminate when all doors are closed and the vehicle is turned off.

The lamps will turn off if all the doors remain closed and:

- 25 seconds elapse
- the POWER button is pressed.

Battery saver

The battery saver will shut off the lamps 10 minutes after the vehicle has been turned off.

- If the dome lamps were turned on using the panel dimmer control, the battery saver will shut them off 10 minutes after the vehicle has been turned off.
- If the courtesy lamps were turned on because one of the vehicle doors or the trunk was opened, the battery saver will shut them off 10 minutes after the vehicle has been turned off.
- The battery saver will shut off the headlamps 10 minutes after the vehicle has been turned off.

Accessory mode battery saver

Accessory mode will shut off after 30 minutes.

Remote Start

Your vehicle has remote start if the transmitter has this button.

The remote start feature allows you to start the vehicle from outside the vehicle. The transmitter has an extended operating range.

Vehicles with automatic climate control can be configured to operate when the vehicle is remote started. Refer to the *Climate Control* chapter for more information.

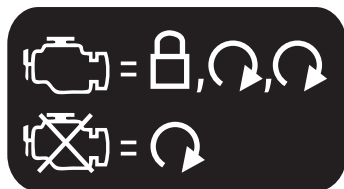
Many states and provinces have restrictions for the use of remote start. Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding remote start systems.

The remote start system will not work if:

- the vehicle is on
- the alarm system is triggered
- the feature has been disabled
- the hood is not closed
- two remote vehicle starts have already been attempted within the last hour
- the vehicle is not in P (Park)
- the vehicle battery voltage is too low
- the powertrain malfunction/reduced power indicator was on the last time the vehicle was driven.

Remote Starting the Vehicle

Note: Each button press must be done within three seconds of each other. The vehicle will not remote start if this sequence is not followed and the horn will not chirp.



The label on your transmitter details the starting procedure. To remote start the vehicle:

1. Press the lock button to lock all the doors.
2. Press the remote start button twice. The exterior lamps will flash twice.

The horn will chirp if the system fails to start (unless quiet start is on). Quiet start will run the blower fan at a slower speed to reduce noise. It can be switched on or off. Refer to the *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

Note: If the vehicle has been remote started you must press the START/STOP button on the instrument panel once while applying the brake pedal before driving the vehicle.

The power windows will be inhibited during the remote start and the radio will not turn on automatically.

The parking lamps will remain on and the vehicle will run for 5, 10, or 15 minutes, depending on the setting. Refer to the *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter to select the duration of the remote start system.

Extending the Vehicle Run Time

Repeat Steps 1 and 2 with the vehicle still running to extend the run time for another remote start duration. If you programmed the duration to last 10 minutes, the second 10 minutes will be added. For example, if the vehicle had been running from the first remote start for five minutes, the vehicle will continue to run now for a total of 20 minutes. You can only extend the remote start once.

Wait at least five seconds before remote starting after a vehicle shutdown. Only two remote starts are allowed.

The vehicle must be started without remote start then switched back off or allow one hour to pass before using remote start again if additional remote starts are desired.

Turning the Vehicle Off After Remote Starting



Press the button once. The parking lamps will turn off.

You may have to be closer to the vehicle than when starting due to ground reflection and the added noise of the running vehicle.

You can disable or enable the remote start system through the message center. Refer to the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

SECURILOCK® PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

SecuriLock® passive anti-theft system is an vehicle immobilization system. This system is designed to help prevent the vehicle from being started unless an **intelligent access keys programmed to your vehicle** is used. The use of the wrong type of coded key may lead to a “no-start” condition. The message center will display that no key is detected.

If you are unable to start the vehicle with a correctly coded key, this indicates a malfunction.

Your vehicle comes with two intelligent access keys; additional ones may be purchased from your authorized dealer. The authorized dealer can program your spare transmitters.

Note: The SecuriLock® passive anti-theft system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems. Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and a loss of security protection.

Note: Large metallic objects, electronic devices that are used to purchase gasoline or similar items, or a second coded key on the same key chain may cause vehicle starting issues. You need to prevent these objects from touching the coded key while starting the vehicle. These objects will not cause damage to the coded key, but may cause a momentary issue if they are too close to the key when starting the vehicle. If a problem occurs, turn the ignition off, remove all objects on the key chain away from the coded key and restart the vehicle.

Note: Do not leave a duplicate coded key in the vehicle. Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle.

Automatic Arming

The vehicle is armed immediately after switching the ignition off.

Automatic Disarming

Switching the ignition on with a coded key disarms the vehicle.

Replacement of intelligent access keys

Note: Your vehicle comes equipped with two intelligent access keys.

The intelligent access key functions as both a programmed key that operates the driver door lock, activates intelligent access with push button start systems as well as a remote keyless entry transmitter. A maximum of eight intelligent access keys can be programmed to your vehicle.

If your intelligent access keys are lost or stolen and you don't have an extra coded key, you will need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer. The key codes need to be erased from your vehicle and new coded keys will need to be programmed.

Replacing coded keys can be very costly. Store an extra programmed key away from the vehicle in a safe place to help prevent any inconveniences. Please visit an authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement keys.

PERIMETER ALARM SYSTEM

The perimeter anti-theft system will warn you in the event of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle.

If there is any potential perimeter anti-theft problem with your vehicle, ensure **ALL remote entry transmitters** are taken to the authorized dealer to aid in troubleshooting.

Arming the system


When armed, this system will respond if unauthorized entry is attempted. When unauthorized entry occurs, the system will flash the park/turn lamps and will sound the horn.

The system is ready to arm whenever the key is removed from the ignition. Either of the following actions will prearm the alarm system:

- Press the lock control on the remote entry transmitter.
- Open a door and press the power door lock control to lock all the doors, and then close the door.

Disarming the system

You can disarm the system by any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors by pressing the  control on your remote entry transmitter.
- Turn the ignition on or start the vehicle.
- If using a key in the driver's door to unlock the vehicle, a chime will sound when you open the door and you will have 12 seconds to disarm the alarm system using any of the actions above, otherwise the alarm will trigger.

Pressing the power door unlock control within the 11 second prearmed mode will return the vehicle to a disarmed state.

Triggering the anti-theft system

The armed system will be triggered if any door, trunk or the hood is opened without using the key or the remote entry transmitter.

FRONT SEATS



WARNING: Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's safety belt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.



WARNING: Do not pile cargo higher than the seatbacks to reduce the risk of injury in a collision or sudden stop.



WARNING: Before returning the seatback to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped behind the seatback. After returning the seatback to its original position, pull on the seatback to ensure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or collision.



WARNING: Never adjust the driver's seat or seatback when the vehicle is moving.



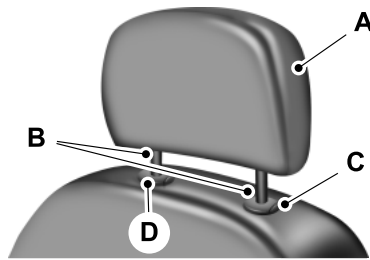
WARNING: Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.

Adjustable head restraints



WARNING: To minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash, the driver and passenger occupants should not sit in and/or operate the vehicle, until the head restraint is placed in its proper position. The driver should never adjust the head restraint while the vehicle is in motion.

Your vehicle is equipped with front row head restraints that are vertically adjustable.



The adjustable head restraints consist of :

- a trimmed energy absorbing foam and structure (A),
- two steel stems (B),
- a guide sleeve adjust/release button (C),
- and a guide sleeve unlock/remove button (D).

To adjust the head restraint, do the following:

1. Adjust the seatback to an upright driving/riding position.
2. Raise the head restraint by pulling up on the head restraint (A).
3. Lower the head restraint by pressing and holding the guide sleeve adjust/release button (C) and pushing down on the head restraint (A).

Properly adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is even with the top of your head and positioned as close as possible to the back of your head. For occupants of extremely tall stature, adjust the head restraint to its full up position.



WARNING: The adjustable head restraint is a safety device.

Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied.

To remove the adjustable head restraint, do the following:

1. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches the highest adjustment position.
2. Simultaneously press and hold both the adjust/release button (C) and the unlock/remove button (D), then pull up on the head restraint.

To reinstall the adjustable head restraint, do the following:

1. Insert the two stems into the guide sleeve collars.
2. Push the head restraint down until it locks.

Make sure the front of the head restraint faces the front of the vehicle.

Properly adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is even with the top of your head and positioned as close as possible to the back of your head. For occupants of extremely tall stature, adjust the head restraint to its full up position.



WARNING: To minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash, head restraints must be installed properly.

Tilting Head Restraints (If Equipped)

The front head restraints may have a tilting feature for extra comfort. To tilt the head restraint, do the following:



1. Adjust the seatback to an upright driving/riding position.
2. Tilt the head restraint forward by gently pulling the top of the head restraint.

Once it is in its forward-most position, tilting it forward once more will release it to the upright position.

Note: Do not attempt to force the head restraint backward after it is tilted. Instead, continue tilting it forward until the head restraint releases to the upright position.

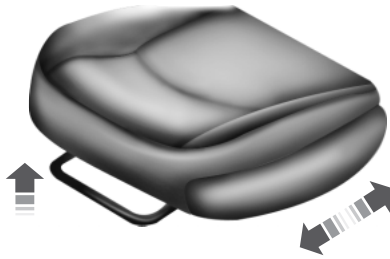
MANUAL SEATS



WARNING: Never adjust the driver's seat or seatback when the vehicle is moving.

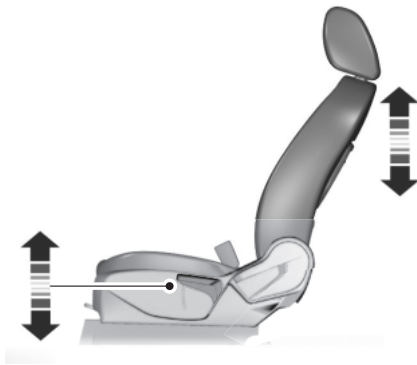


WARNING: Rock the seat backward and forward after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged.

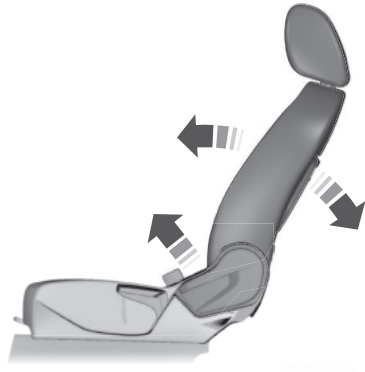


Moving the Seat Backward and Forward

Adjust the Height of the Driver's Seat



Recline Adjustment

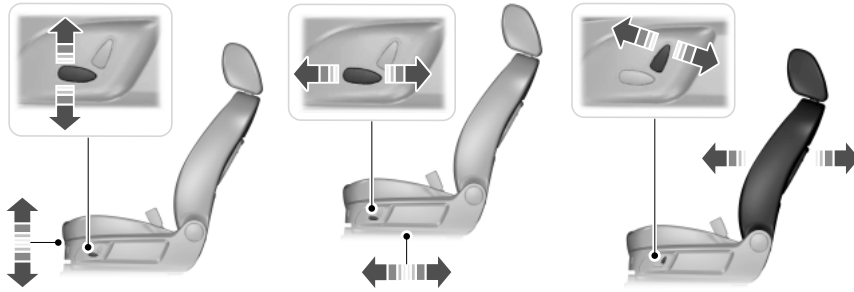
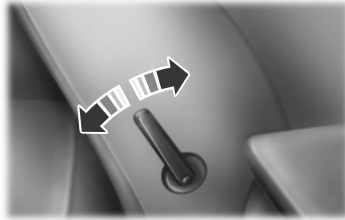


! **WARNING:** Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's safety belt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

POWER SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)


! **WARNING:** Never adjust the driver's seat or seat back when the vehicle is moving.

! **WARNING:** Reclining the seat back can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's safety belt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

**Lumbar Adjustment (If Equipped)**

Use the lever located on the side of the seat back to adjust the lumbar.

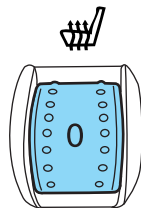
Heated seats (if equipped)

 **WARNING:** Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion, or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the seat heater. The seat heater may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion, because this may cause the seat heater to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles, or other pointed objects because this may damage the heating element which may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Note: Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat
- Operate the seat heater if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.
- Operate the heated seats unless the motor is running. Doing so could drain the vehicle's battery.

To operate the heated seats, turn the thumbwheel to the desired heat setting 0–5:



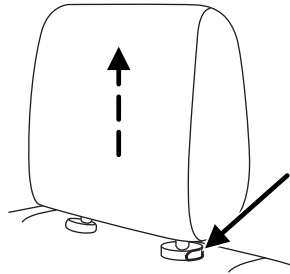
- Setting 0 is off, 1 is the lowest heat setting and setting 5 is the highest.

REAR SEATS**Second row head restraints*****Outboard seat positions***

Your vehicle is equipped with removable outboard head restraints.



WARNING: To minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash, the driver and passenger occupants should not sit in and/or operate the vehicle, until the head restraint is placed in its proper position. The driver should never adjust the head restraint while the vehicle is in motion.



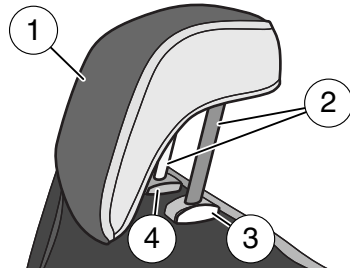
The removable head restraints consist of the same features as the front seat head restraints, but are not vertically adjustable and are equipped with a single unlock/remove button.

To remove the head restraints, press the unlock/remove button and pull the head restraint up.

To reinstall the head restraint, insert the two stems into the guide sleeve collars and push the head restraint down until it locks.

Center seat position

Your vehicle is equipped with a second row center head restraint that is vertically adjustable and removable.



The adjustable center head restraint consists of:

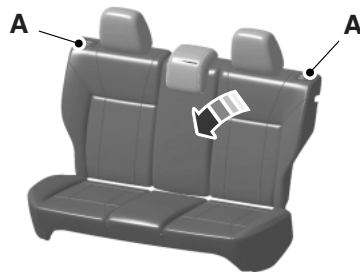
- a trimmed energy absorbing foam and structure (1),
- two steel stems (2),
- a guide sleeve adjust/release button (3),
- and a guide sleeve unlock/remove button (4).

The second-row center head restraint functions the same as the first row head restraints. For details about how to raise, lower and remove the head restraint, refer to *Adjustable head restraints* at the beginning of this chapter.

Folding the Rear Seats

Note: Before lowering the seat back(s), remove the outboard head restraints.

To lower the seat back(s) from inside the vehicle, do the following:

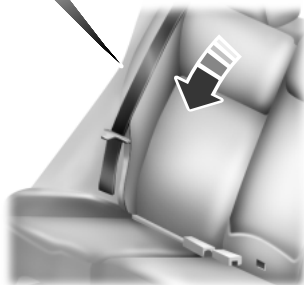


1. Press the unlock buttons (A) down.
2. Push the seat back forward.

Note: Your vehicle may have split seat backs that must be folded individually.



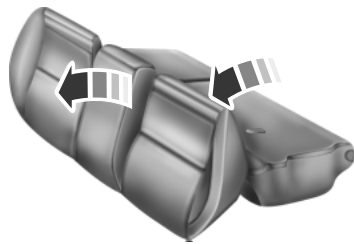
3. Stow the safety belt in the belt stowage clip. This will prevent the safety belt from getting caught in the seat latch.



When raising the seatback(s), make sure you hear the seat latch into place and that no red portion is visible on the release button on both sides.

Flip Up Seat Cushions (If Equipped)

WARNING: Before returning the seat back to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped behind the seat back. Make sure that the safety belt is not laying on the seat latch. After returning the seat back to its original position, pull on the seat back to ensure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or collision.



For additional cargo space, flip the seat cushions up before folding the seat back. This feature is only available on vehicles with a split folding seat back.

PERSONAL SAFETY SYSTEM™

The Personal Safety System provides an improved overall level of frontal crash protection to front seat occupants and is designed to help further reduce the risk of airbag-related injuries. The system is able to analyze different occupant conditions and crash severity before activating the appropriate safety devices to help better protect a range of occupants in a variety of frontal crash situations.

Your vehicle's Personal Safety System consists of:

- Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints.
- Front safety belts with pretensioners, energy management retractors, and safety belt usage sensors.
- Driver's and/or passenger's seat position sensor.
- Front crash severity sensor.
- Front passenger sensing system.
- "Passenger airbag off" or "pass airbag off" indicator lamp.
- Restraints Control Module (RCM) with impact and safing sensors.
- Restraint system warning message.

- The electrical wiring for the airbags, crash sensor(s), safety belt pretensioners, front safety belt usage sensors, driver seat position sensor, and indicator lights.

How does the Personal Safety System work?

The Personal Safety System can adapt the deployment strategy of your vehicle's safety devices according to crash severity and conditions. A collection of crash sensors provides information to the Restraints Control Module (RCM). During a crash, the RCM may activate the safety belt pretensioners and/or either none, one, or both stages of the dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints based on crash severity and conditions.

The fact that the pretensioners or airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the Personal Safety System determined the accident conditions (crash severity, belt usage, etc.) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices. Front airbags are designed to activate only in frontal and near-frontal collisions, not rollovers, side-impacts, or rear-impacts unless the collision causes sufficient longitudinal deceleration.

Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints

The dual-stage airbags offer the capability to tailor the level of airbag inflation energy. A lower, less forceful energy level is provided for more common, moderate-severity impacts. A higher energy level is used for the most severe impacts. Refer to *Airbag supplemental restraints (SRS)* section in this chapter.

Front crash severity sensors

The front crash severity sensors enhances the ability to detect the severity of an impact. Positioned up front, it provides valuable information early in the crash event on the severity of the impact. This allows your Personal Safety System to distinguish between different levels of crash severity and modify the deployment strategy of the dual-stage airbags and safety belt pretensioners.

Driver's and/or passenger seat position sensor

The driver's seat position sensor allows your Personal Safety System to tailor the deployment level of the driver dual-stage airbag based on seat position. The system is designed to help protect smaller drivers sitting close to the driver airbag by providing a lower airbag output level.

Front passenger sensing system

For airbags to do their job they must inflate with great force, and this force can pose a potentially deadly risk to occupants that are very close to the airbag when it begins to inflate. For some occupants, like infants in rear-facing child seats, this occurs because they are initially sitting very close to the airbag. For other occupants, this occurs when the occupant is not properly restrained by safety belts or child safety seats and they move forward during pre-crash braking. The most effective way to reduce the risk of unnecessary injuries is to make sure all occupants are properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are much safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front.



WARNING: Air bags can kill or injure a child in a child seat.

NEVER place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active air bag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat all the way back.



WARNING: Always transport children 12 years old and under in a rear seating position and always properly use appropriate child restraints.

The front passenger sensing system can automatically turn off the passenger front airbag. The system is designed to help protect small (child size) occupants from airbag deployments when they are improperly seated or restrained in the front passenger seat contrary to proper child-seating or restraint usage recommendations. Even with this technology, parents are **STRONGLY** encouraged to always properly restrain children in the rear seat. The sensor also turns off the airbag when the passenger seat is empty to prevent unnecessary replacement of the airbag(s) after a collision.

When the front passenger seat is occupied and the sensing system has turned off the passenger's frontal airbag, the "pass airbag off" indicator will light and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is off. See *Front passenger sensing system* in the *Airbag supplemental restraints (SRS)* section of this chapter.

Front safety belt usage sensors

The front safety belt usage sensors detect whether or not the driver and front outboard passenger safety belts are fastened. This information allows your Personal Safety System to tailor the airbag deployment and safety belt pretensioner activation depending upon safety belt usage.

Front outboard safety belt pretensioners

The safety belt pretensioners at the front outboard seating positions are designed to tighten the safety belts firmly against the occupant's body during frontal collisions, and in side collisions when the side air curtain system activates. This helps increase the effectiveness of the safety belts. In frontal collisions, the safety belt pretensioners can be activated alone or, if the collision is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags.

Front outboard safety belt energy management retractors

The front safety belt energy management retractors allow webbing to be pulled out of the retractor in a gradual and controlled manner in response to the occupant's forward momentum. This helps reduce the risk of force-related injuries to the occupant's chest by limiting the load on the occupant.

Determining if the Personal Safety System is operational

The Personal Safety System uses a warning light in the instrument cluster, a warning message, or a backup tone to indicate the condition of the system. Refer to the *Warning lights and indicators* section in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Routine maintenance of the Personal Safety System is not required.

The Restraints Control Module (RCM) monitors its own internal circuits and the circuits for the airbag supplemental restraints, crash sensor(s), safety belt pretensioners, front safety belt buckle sensors, front passenger sensing system, and the driver seat position sensor. In addition, the RCM also monitors the restraints warning light in the instrument cluster. A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following.

- The warning light will either flash or stay lit.
- The warning light will not illuminate immediately after ignition is turned on.
- A warning message will appear until the problem and warning light are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the Personal Safety System serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.

SAFETY BELT SYSTEM

WARNING: Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of injury, make sure children sit where they can be properly restrained.



WARNING: Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision.



WARNING: All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an air bag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.



WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.



WARNING: In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt.



WARNING: Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific safety belt assembly which is made up of one buckle and one tongue that are designed to be used as a pair. 1) Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. 2) Never swing the safety belt around your neck over the inside shoulder. 3) Never use a single belt for more than one person.



WARNING: When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.



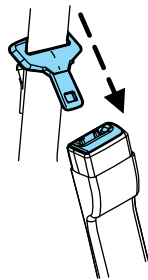
WARNING: Safety belts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.



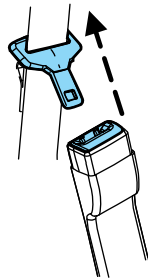
WARNING: Front and rear seat occupants, including pregnant women, should wear safety belts for optimum protection in an accident.

Combination lap and shoulder belts

The front outboard and rear safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts.



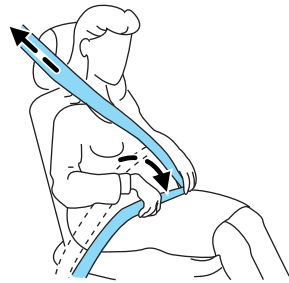
1. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.



2. To unfasten, press the release button and remove the tongue from the buckle.

Restraint of pregnant women

! **WARNING:** Always ride and drive with your seatback upright and the safety belt properly fastened. The lap portion of the safety belt should fit snug and be positioned low across the hips. The shoulder portion of the safety belt should be positioned across the chest. Pregnant women should also follow this practice. See figure below.



Pregnant women should always wear their safety belt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

Safety belt locking modes

All safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts. The driver safety belt has the first locking mode and the front outboard passenger and rear seat safety belts have both types of locking modes described as follows:

Vehicle sensitive mode

This is the normal retractor mode, which allows free shoulder belt length adjustment to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement. For example, if the driver brakes suddenly or turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the combination safety belts will lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

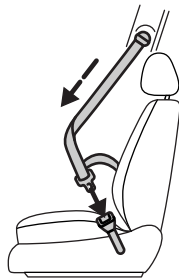
In addition, the retractor is designed to lock if the webbing is pulled out too quickly. If this occurs, let the belt retract slightly and pull webbing out again in a slow and controlled manner.

Automatic locking mode

In this mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The automatic locking mode is not available on the driver safety belt.

When to use the automatic locking mode

This mode should be used **any time** a child safety seat, except a booster, is installed in passenger front or rear seating positions. Children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. Refer to *Safety restraints for children* or *Safety seats for children* later in this chapter.

How to use the automatic locking mode

1. Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire belt is pulled out.

- Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the safety belt is now in the automatic locking mode.

How to disengage the automatic locking mode

Disconnect the combination lap/shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.



WARNING: After any vehicle collision, the safety belt system at all passenger seating positions must be checked by an authorized dealer to verify that the “automatic locking retractor” feature for child seats is still functioning properly. In addition, all safety belts should be checked for proper function.



WARNING: BELT AND RETRACTOR ASSEMBLY MUST BE REPLACED if the safety belt assembly “automatic locking retractor” feature or any other safety belt function is not operating properly when checked by an authorized dealer. Failure to replace the belt and retractor assembly could increase the risk of injury in collisions.

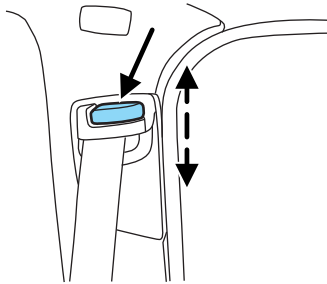
Safety belt extension assembly

If the safety belt is too short when fully extended, a safety belt extension assembly can be obtained from an authorized dealer.

Use only extensions manufactured by the same supplier as the safety belt. Manufacturer identification is located at the end of the webbing on the label. Also, use the safety belt extension only if the safety belt is too short for you when fully extended.



WARNING: Do not use extensions to change the fit of the shoulder belt across the torso.

Safety belt height adjustment

Adjust the height of the shoulder belt so the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder.

To adjust the shoulder belt height, squeeze the button and slide the height adjuster up or down. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.



WARNING: Position the safety belt height adjusters so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the safety belt properly could reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and increase the risk of injury in a collision.

Safety belt warning light and indicator chime

The safety belt warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster and a chime sounds to remind the occupants to fasten their safety belts.

Conditions of operation

If...	Then...
The driver's safety belt is not buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light illuminates 1-2 minutes and the warning chime sounds 4-8 seconds.
The driver's safety belt is buckled while the indicator light is illuminated and the warning chime is sounding...	The safety belt warning light and warning chime turn off.
The driver's safety belt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light and indicator chime remain off.

Belt-Minder®

The Belt-Minder® feature is a supplemental warning to the safety belt warning function. This feature provides additional reminders by intermittently sounding a chime and illuminating the safety belt warning light in the instrument cluster when the driver's and/or front passenger's seat is occupied and the safety belt is unbuckled.

The Belt-Minder® feature uses information from the front passenger sensing system to determine if a front seat passenger is present and therefore potentially in need of a warning. To avoid activating the Belt-Minder® feature for objects placed in the front passenger seat, warnings will only be given to large front seat occupants as determined by the front passenger sensing system.

Both the driver's and passenger's safety belt usages are monitored and either may activate the Belt-Minder® feature. The warnings are the same for the driver and the front passenger. If the Belt-Minder® warnings have expired (warnings for approximately five minutes) for one occupant (driver or front passenger), the other occupant can still activate the Belt-Minder® feature.

If...	Then...
The driver's and front passenger's safety belts are buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position or less than 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to on...	The Belt-Minder® feature will not activate.
The driver's or front passenger's safety belt is not buckled when the vehicle has reached at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to on...	The Belt-Minder® feature is activated - the safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for six seconds every 25 seconds, repeating for approximately five minutes or until the safety belts are buckled.
The driver's or front passenger's safety belt becomes unbuckled for approximately one minute while the vehicle is traveling at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and more than 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to on...	The Belt-Minder® feature is activated - the safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for six seconds every 25 seconds, repeating for approximately five minutes or until the safety belts are buckled.

The following are reasons most often given for not wearing safety belts
(All statistics based on U.S. data):

Reasons given...	Consider...
“Crashes are rare events”	36700 crashes occur every day. The more we drive, the more we are exposed to “rare” events, even for good drivers. <i>1 in 4 of us will be seriously injured in a crash during our lifetime.</i>
“I’m not going far”	3 of 4 fatal crashes occur within 25 miles (40 km) of home.
“Belts are uncomfortable”	We design our safety belts to enhance comfort. If you are uncomfortable - try different positions for the safety belt upper anchorage and seatback which should be as upright as possible; this can improve comfort.
“I was in a hurry”	Prime time for an accident. Belt-Minder® reminds us to take a few seconds to buckle up.
“Safety belts don’t work”	Safety belts , when used properly, reduce risk of death to front seat occupants by 45% in cars , and by 60% in light trucks .
“Traffic is light”	Nearly 1 of 2 deaths occur in single-vehicle crashes , many when no other vehicles are around.
“Belts wrinkle my clothes”	Possibly, but a serious crash can do much more than wrinkle your clothes, particularly if you are unbelted.
“The people I’m with don’t wear belts”	Set the example, teen deaths occur 4 times more often in vehicles with TWO or MORE people. Children and younger brothers/sisters imitate behavior they see.

Reasons given...	Consider...
“I have an airbag”	Airbags offer greater protection when used with safety belts. Frontal airbags are not designed to inflate in rear and side crashes or rollovers.
“I’d rather be thrown clear”	Not a good idea. People who are ejected are 40 times more likely to DIE . Safety belts help prevent ejection, WE CAN’T “PICK OUR CRASH”.



WARNING: Do not sit on top of a buckled safety belt or insert a latchplate into the buckle to avoid the Belt-Minder® chime. To do so may adversely affect the performance of the vehicle’s airbag system.

Deactivating/activating the Belt-Minder® Feature (if equipped)



WARNING: While the design allows you to deactivate your Belt-Minder®, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving an accident. We recommend you leave the Belt-Minder® system activated for yourself and others who may use the vehicle. To reduce the risk of injury, do not deactivate/activate the Belt-Minder® feature while driving the vehicle.

Note: The driver and front passenger Belt-Minder® are deactivated/activated independently. When deactivating/activating one seating position, do not buckle the other position as this will terminate the process.

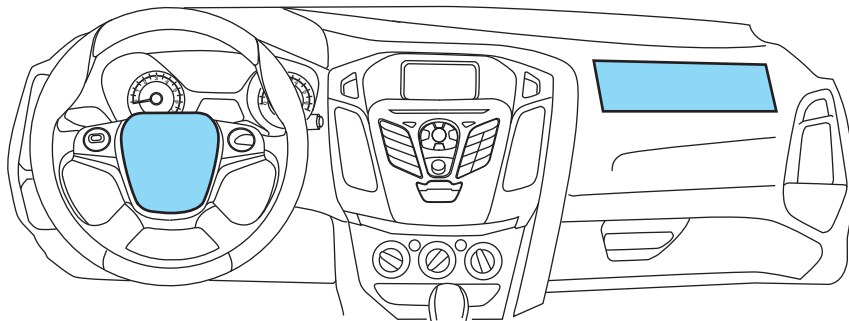
Read Steps 1 - 4 thoroughly before proceeding with the deactivation/activation programming procedure.

The driver and front passenger Belt-Minder® features can be deactivated/activated by performing the following procedure:

Before following the procedure, make sure that:

- The parking brake is set
- The gearshift is in P (Park)
- The vehicle is off
- The driver and front passenger safety belts are unbuckled

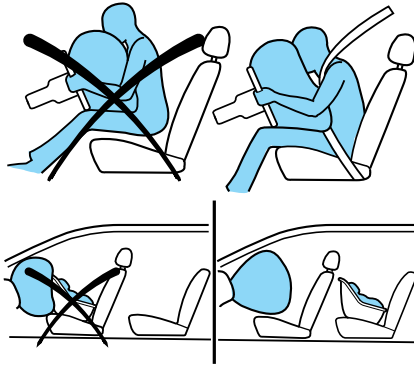
1. Turn the vehicle on. Do not start the vehicle (Ready to Drive light must not be lit)
2. Wait until the safety belt warning light turns off (approximately one minute).
 - Once the next step is started, the procedure must be completed within 60 seconds.
3. For the seating position being disabled, buckle then unbuckle the safety belt four times at a moderate speed, ending in the unbuckled state.
 - After Step 3, the safety belt warning light will turn on.
4. While the safety belt warning light is on, buckle and then unbuckle the safety belt.
 - After Step 4, the safety belt warning light will flash three times for confirmation.
 - This will disable the Belt-Minder feature for that seating position if it is currently enabled.
 - This will enable the Belt-Minder® feature for that seating position if it is currently disabled.

AIRBAG SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS)

The supplemental restraint system is designed to work with the safety belt to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries.

! **WARNING:** Airbags **DO NOT** inflate slowly or gently, and the risk of injury from a deploying airbag is the greatest close to the trim covering the airbag module.

Important SRS precautions



The SRS is designed to work with the safety belt to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags **DO NOT** inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.

! **WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an air bag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.


! **WARNING:** When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.


! **WARNING:** The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

! **WARNING:** Never place your arm over the airbag module as a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries.

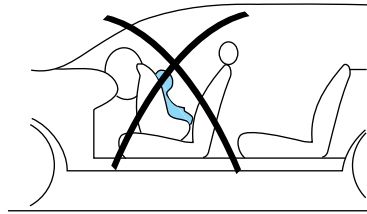
To properly position yourself away from the airbag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Recline the seat slightly one or two degrees from the upright position.

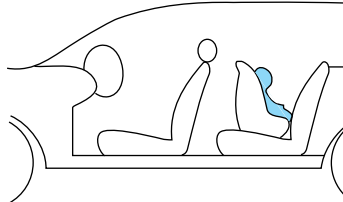
 **WARNING:** Do not put anything on or over the airbag module. Placing objects on or over the airbag inflation area may cause those objects to be propelled by the airbag into your face and torso causing serious injury.


 **WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag supplemental restraint systems or its fuses. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

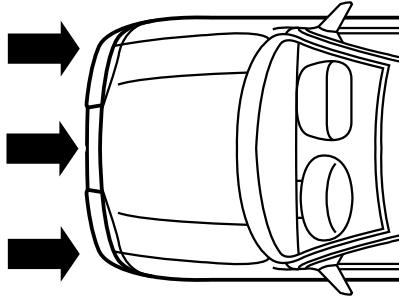
Children and airbags



Children must always be properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a collision.



 **WARNING:** Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. **NEVER** place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat all the way back.

How does the safety belt pretensioner and airbag supplemental restraint system work?

The safety belt pretensioner and airbag SRS are designed to activate when the vehicle sustains longitudinal deceleration sufficient to cause the sensors to close an electrical circuit that initiates pretensioner activation and airbag inflation.

The fact that the pretensioners and airbags did not activate in a collision does not mean that something is

wrong with the system. Rather, it means the forces were not of the type sufficient to cause activation. Front airbags are designed to activate in frontal and near-frontal collisions, not rollover, side-impact, or rear-impacts unless the collision causes sufficient longitudinal deceleration.



The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium compounds (e.g., baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.

While the system is designed to help reduce serious injuries, contact with a deploying airbag may also cause abrasions, swelling or temporary hearing loss. Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.



WARNING: Several air bag system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation.



WARNING: If the air bag has deployed, **the air bag will not function again and must be replaced immediately.** If the air bag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.

The SRS consists of:

- driver and passenger airbag modules (which include the inflators and airbags)
- seat-mounted side airbags. Refer to *Seat-mounted side airbag system* later in this chapter
- safety belt pretensioners
- one or more impact and safing sensors

- a readiness light and tone
- and the electrical wiring which connects the components
- Side curtain airbag system. Refer to *Side curtain airbag system* later in this chapter.
- Front passenger sensing system. Refer to *Front passenger sensing system* later in this chapter.
- “Passenger airbag off” or “pass airbag off” indicator lamp. Refer to *Front passenger sensing system* later in this chapter.

The diagnostic module monitors its own internal circuits and the supplemental airbag electrical system wiring (including the impact sensors), the system wiring, the airbag system readiness light, the airbag backup power, the airbag ignitors and safety belt pretensioners.

FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM



WARNING: Even with Advanced Restraints Systems, children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.



WARNING: Sitting improperly out of position or with the seat back reclined too far can take off weight from the seat cushion and affect the decision of the front passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright against your seatback, with your feet on the floor.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of possible serious injury:
Do not stow objects in seat back map pocket (if equipped) or hang objects off seat back if a child is in the front passenger seat. Do not place objects underneath the front passenger seat or between the seat and the center console (if equipped).
Check the passenger airbag off or pass airbag off indicator lamp for proper airbag Status.
Failure to follow these instructions may interfere with the passenger seat sensing system.



WARNING: Any alteration/modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system.

This system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger's seat and safety belt to detect the presence of a properly seated occupant and determine if the front passenger's frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or not.



The front passenger sensing system uses a pass airbag off indicator which will illuminate and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled.

The indicator lamp is located under the climate controls. The indicator lamp will illuminate for a short period of time when the ignition is turned to the on position to confirm it is functional.

Note: When the passenger airbag off light is illuminated, the passenger (seat mounted) side airbag may be disabled to avoid the risk of airbag deployment injuries.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable (will not inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag when the front passenger seat is unoccupied, or a rear facing infant seat, a forward-facing child restraint, or a booster seat is detected.

- When the front passenger sensing system disables (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator will illuminate the OFF lamp and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled.
- If the child restraint has been installed and the indicator lamp is not lit, then turn the vehicle off, remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to enable (may inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front passenger seat.

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag (may inflate), the indicator will be unlit and stay unlit.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger's seat, but the pass airbag off indicator lamp is lit, it is possible that the person isn't sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Turn the vehicle off and ask the person to place the seatback in the full upright position.

- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person’s legs comfortably extended.
- Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This will allow the system to detect that person and enable the passenger’s frontal airbag.
- If the indicator lamp remains lit even after this, the person should be advised to ride in the rear seat.

Occupant	Pass Airbag Off Indicator Lamp	Passenger Airbag
Empty	Unlit	Disabled
Child	Lit	Disabled
Adult	Unlit	Enabled

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on safety belts, it’s very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seat back, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

If you think that the status of the passenger airbag off indicator lamp is incorrect, check for the following:

- Objects lodged underneath the seat
- Objects between the seat cushion and the center console (if equipped)
- Objects hanging off the seat back
- Objects stowed in the seatback map pocket (if equipped)
- Objects placed on the occupant’s lap
- Cargo interference with the seat
- Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat
- Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat

The conditions listed above may cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat may appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions described in the list above.



To know if the front passenger sensing system is operating properly, refer to *Crash sensors and Airbag Indicator* later in this chapter.

If the airbag readiness lamp is lit, do the following:

The driver and/or adult passengers should check for any objects that may be lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.

If objects are lodged and/or cargo is interfering with the seat; please take the following steps to remove the obstruction:

- Pull the vehicle over.
- Turn the vehicle off.
- Driver and/or adult passengers should check for any objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.
- Remove the obstruction(s) (if found).
- Restart the vehicle.
- Wait at least two minutes and verify that the airbag readiness lamp is no longer illuminated
- If the airbag readiness lamp remains illuminated, this may or may/not be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.

DO NOT attempt to repair or service the system; take your vehicle immediately to an authorized dealer.

If it is necessary to modify an advanced front airbag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center at the phone number shown in the *Customer Assistance* section of this *Owner's Manual*.

Determining if the system is operational

The system uses a warning indicator light in the instrument cluster or a backup tone to indicate the condition of the system. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:




- The readiness light (same light for front and side airbag system) will either flash or stay lit.
- The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after ignition is turned on.
- An information message will appear in the message center.


If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the supplemental restraint system serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.


Knee Airbag (if equipped)


The knee airbag is located under the instrument panel. The system works along with the driver's front airbag to help reduce injury to the legs. When the driver's airbag activates in a collision, the knee airbag deploys from under the instrument panel. As with front and side airbags, it is important to be properly seated and restrained to reduce the risk of death or serious injury.


Seat-mounted side airbag system

 **WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover on the side of the seatbacks of the front seats or in front seat areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a collision.

 **WARNING:** Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.

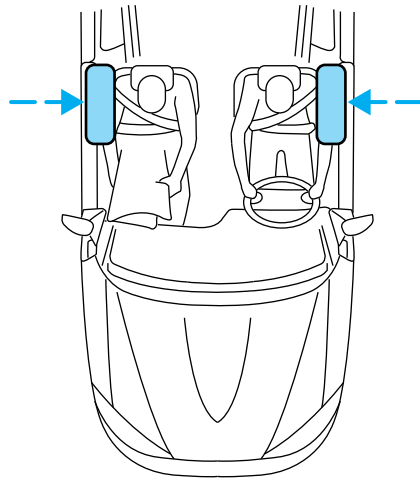
 **WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

 **WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag SRS, its fuses or the seat cover on a seat containing an airbag. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

 **WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle should always wear their safety belts even when an airbag SRS is provided.

How does the side airbag system work?

The design and development of the side airbag system included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags.



The side airbag system consists of the following:

- An inflatable bag (airbag) with an inflator concealed behind the outboard bolster of the driver and front passenger seatbacks.
- A special seat cover designed to allow airbag deployment.
- The same warning light, electronic control and diagnostic unit as used for the front airbags.
- Crash sensors located on the front doors and on the rocker behind the C pillar (one sensor on each pillar on each side of the vehicle).

Side airbags, in combination with safety belts, can help reduce the risk of severe injuries in the event of a significant side impact collision.

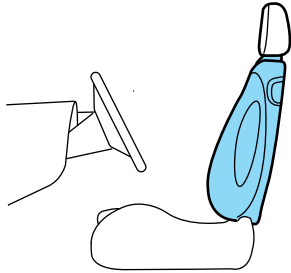
The side airbags are fitted on the outboard side of the seatbacks of the front seats. In certain lateral collisions, the airbag on the side affected by the collision will be inflated. The airbag was designed to inflate between the door panel and occupant to further enhance the protection provided occupants in side impact collisions.

The airbag SRS is designed to activate when the vehicle sustains lateral acceleration sufficient to cause the sensors to close an electrical circuit that initiates airbag inflation.

The fact that the airbags did not inflate in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the forces were not of the type sufficient to cause activation. Side airbags are designed to inflate in side-impact collisions, not roll-over, rear-impact, frontal or near-frontal collisions, unless the collision causes sufficient lateral deceleration.

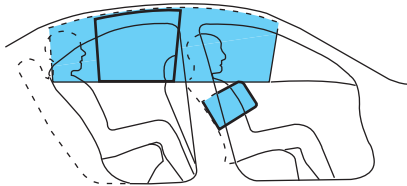


WARNING: Several air bag system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation.



WARNING: If the side airbag has deployed, **the airbag will not function again. The side airbag system (including the seat) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer.** If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.

Side-curtain airbag system



WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying side air curtain. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a collision.



WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the side air curtain cover.



WARNING: Do not lean your head on the door. The side air curtain could injure you as it deploys from the headliner.



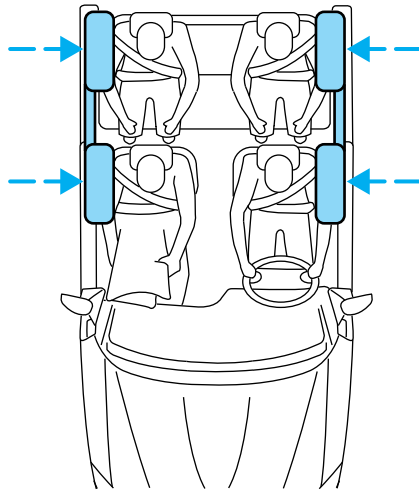
WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the side air curtain system, its fuses, the A, B, or C pillar trim, or the headliner on a vehicle containing a side air curtain. See your authorized dealer.



WARNING: All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always wear their safety belts even when an inflatable curtain is provided.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment zone of the inflatable curtain.

How does the side air curtain system work?

The design and development of the side air curtain system included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags (including side air curtain systems).

The side air curtain system consists of the following:

- An inflatable curtain with a gas generator concealed behind the headliner and above the doors.

- The headliner will flex to open above the side doors to allow air curtain deployment.
- The same warning light, electronic control and diagnostic unit as used for the front airbags.
- Two pressure sensors located in the front doors.
- Two crash sensors located on the rocker panel behind the lower C pillar.

Side air curtains and side airbags, in combination with safety belts, can help reduce the risk of severe injuries in the event of a significant side impact collision.

Children 12 years old and under should always be properly restrained in the rear seats. The side air curtain will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat because it is designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window openings.

The side air curtains are mounted to the sheet metal above the first and second row seats. In certain lateral collisions, the air curtain and seat-mounted side airbag on the side affected by the collision will be inflated, except that the passenger sensing system will deactivate the

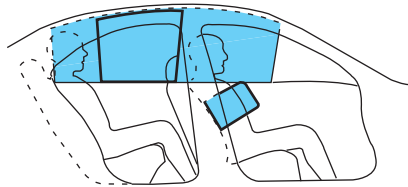
passenger seat-mounted side airbag if it detects an empty unbuckled passenger seat. The air curtain was designed to inflate between the side window area and occupant to further enhance the head protection provided to occupants in side impact collisions. The seat-mounted side airbag was designed to inflate between the door panel and occupant to further enhance the protection provided occupants in side impact collisions.

The side air curtain system SRS is designed to activate when the vehicle sustains lateral deceleration sufficient to cause the sensors to close an electrical circuit that initiates air curtain and seat-mounted side airbag inflation.

The fact that the side air curtain and seat-mounted side airbag did not inflate in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the forces were not of the type sufficient to cause activation. The side air curtain system is designed to inflate in side impact collisions, not roll-over, rear impact, frontal or near-frontal collisions, unless the collision causes sufficient lateral deceleration.



WARNING: Several air bag system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation.



WARNING: If the side air curtain has deployed, **the air curtain will not function again. The side air curtain system (including the A, B and C pillar trim and headliner) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer.** If the air curtain is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.

Determining if the system is operational

The SRS uses a readiness light in the instrument cluster or a tone to indicate the condition of the system. Refer to *Warning lights and indicators* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Routine maintenance of the side airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

- The readiness light (same light as for front airbag system) will either flash or stay lit.
- The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after ignition is turned on.
- An information message will appear in the message center.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the SRS serviced at your authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.

SOS Post-Crash Alert System™

The system flashes the turn signal lamps and sounds the horn (intermittently) in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag (front, side, side curtain or Safety Canopy®) or the safety belt pretensioners.

The horn and lamps will turn off when:

- the hazard control button is pressed, or
- the vehicle runs out of power.

Disposal of airbags and airbag equipped vehicles (including pretensioners)

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Airbags MUST BE disposed of by qualified personnel.

SAFETY RESTRAINTS FOR CHILDREN

See the following sections for directions on how to properly use safety restraints for children. Also see *Airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS)* in this chapter for special instructions about using airbags.

Important child restraint precautions

WARNING: Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be purchased separately from the vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.



WARNING: All children are shaped differently. The Recommendations for Safety Restraints are based on probable child height, age and weight thresholds from NHTSA and other safety organizations or are the minimum requirements of law. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) and consult your pediatrician to make sure your child seat is appropriate for your child, and is compatible with and properly installed in the vehicle. To locate a child seat fitting station and CPST contact the NHTSA toll free at 1-888-327-4236 or on the internet at <http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov>. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST or for further information, contact your provincial ministry of transportation, your local St. John Ambulance office at <http://www.sfa.ca>, or Transport Canada at 1-800-333-0371 (<http://www.tc.gc.ca>). Failure to properly restrain children in safety seats made especially for their height, age, and weight may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

Recommendations for Safety Restraints for Children		
	Child size, height, weight, or age	Recommended restraint type
Infants or toddlers	Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger)	Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat).
Small children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, are greater than age four (4) and less than age twelve (12), and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer)	Use a belt-positioning booster seat.
Larger children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer)	Use a vehicle safety belt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seat-back upright.

- You are required by law to properly use safety seats for infants and toddlers in the U.S. and Canada.
- Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 ft 9 in. (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding the safety of children in your vehicle.
- When possible, always properly restrain children twelve (12) years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position.


Recommendations for attaching child safety restraints for children


Restraint Type	Child Weight	Use any attachment method as indicated below by "X"				
		LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	LATCH (lower anchors only)	Safety belt and top tether anchor	Safety belt and LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	Safety belt only
Rear facing child seat	Up to 48 lb (21 kg)		X			X
Forward facing child seat	Up to 48 lb (21 kg)	X		X	X	
Forward facing child seat	Over 48 lb (21 kg)			X	X	





WARNING: Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat.


NEVER place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the vehicle seat all the way back. When possible, all children age 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.


 **WARNING:** Always carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height, weight, or age. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions and warnings provided by the vehicle manufacturer. A safety seat that is improperly installed or utilized, is inappropriate for your child's height, age, or weight or does not properly fit the child may increase the risk of serious injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision, which may result in serious injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Never use pillows, books, or towels to boost a child. They can slide around and increase the likelihood of injury or death in a collision.

 **WARNING:** Always restrain an unoccupied child seat or booster seat. These objects may become projectiles in a collision or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury.

 **WARNING:** Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a collision.

 **WARNING:** Do not leave children, unreliable adults, or pets unattended in your vehicle.

Transporting children

Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their age, height and weight. All children are shaped differently. The child height, age and weight thresholds provided are recommendations or the minimum requirements of law. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) provides education and

training to ensure that all children ages 0 to 16 are properly restrained in the correct restraint system. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) and your pediatrician to make sure your seat is appropriate for your child and properly installed in the vehicle. To locate a child seat fitting station and CPST contact the NHTSA toll free at **1-888-327-4236** or on the internet at <http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov>. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST or for further information, contact your provincial ministry of transportation, your local St. John Ambulance office at <http://www.sfa.ca>, or Transport Canada at 1-800-333-0371 (<http://www.tc.gc.ca>).

Follow all the safety restraint and airbag precautions that apply to adult passengers in your vehicle.

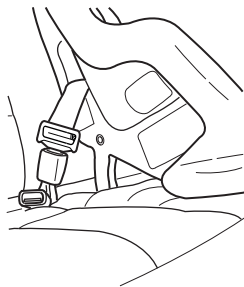
If the child is the proper height, age, and weight (as specified by your child safety seat or booster manufacturer), fits the restraint and can be restrained properly, then restrain the child in the child safety seat or with the belt-positioning booster. Remember that child seats and belt-positioning boosters vary and may be designed to fit children of different heights, ages and weights. Children who are too large for child safety seats or belt-positioning boosters (as specified by your child safety seat manufacturer) should always properly wear safety belts.

SAFETY SEATS FOR CHILDREN

Infant and/or toddler seats

Use a safety seat that is recommended for the size and weight of the child.

When installing a child safety seat:



- Review and follow the information presented in the *Airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS)* section in this chapter.
- Carefully follow all of the manufacturer's instructions included with the safety seat you put in your vehicle. If you do not install and use the safety seat properly, the child may be injured in a sudden stop or collision.

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. NEVER place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the vehicle seat all the way back.

Children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.

Installing child safety seats with combination lap and shoulder belts

Check to make sure the child seat is properly secured before each use. Children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.

When installing a child safety seat with combination lap/shoulder belts:

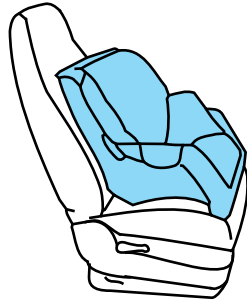
- Use the correct safety belt buckle for that seating position.
- Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.
- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the safety seat, with the tongue between the child seat and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling.
- Place vehicle seat back in upright position.
- Put the safety belt in the automatic locking mode. Refer to Step 5 below. This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.



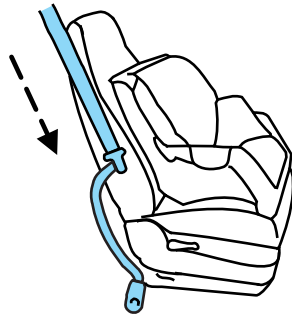
WARNING: Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain safety belt buckle assemblies and/or LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, occupants should only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

Perform the following steps when installing the child seat with combination lap/shoulder belts:

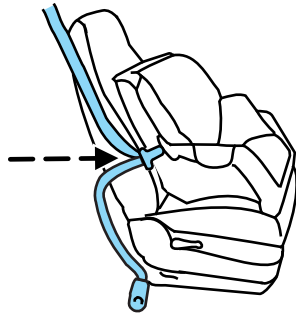
Note: Although the child seat illustrated is a forward facing child seat, the steps are the same for installing a rear facing child seat.



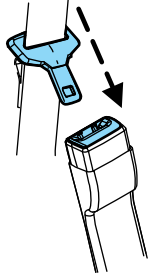
1. Position the child safety seat in a seat with a combination lap and shoulder belt.



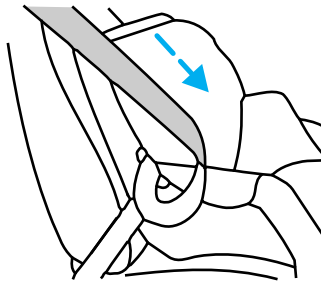
2. Pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together.



3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the belt webbing is not twisted.



4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear a snap and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.

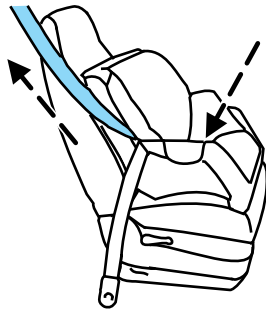


5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until all of the belt is pulled out.

Note: The automatic locking mode is available on the front passenger and rear seats. This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.

6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt will click as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.

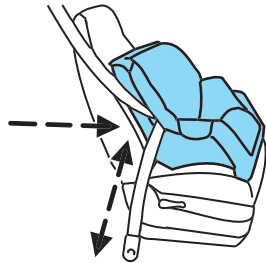
7. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode (you should not be able to pull more belt out). If the retractor is not locked, unbuckle the belt and repeat Steps 5 and 6.



8. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, e.g., by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that will exist once the additional weight of the child is added to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child seat to the vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean towards the buckle will additionally

help to remove remaining slack from the belt.

9. Attach the tether strap (if the child seat is equipped). Refer to *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* later in this chapter.



10. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than 1 inch (2.5 cm) of movement for proper installation.

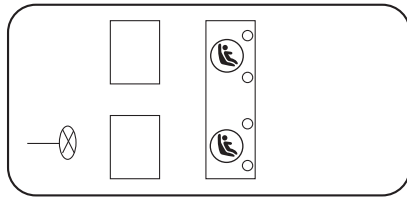
11. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST.

Attaching child safety seats with Lower Anchor and Tethers for Children (LATCH) attachments

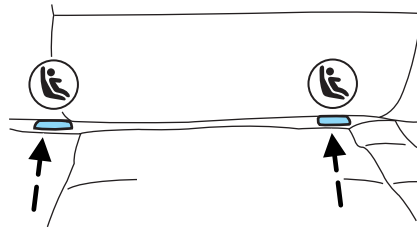
The LATCH system is composed of three vehicle anchor points: two (2) lower anchors located where the vehicle seat back and seat cushion meet (called the “seat bight”) and one (1) top tether anchor located behind that seating position.

LATCH compatible child safety seats have two rigid or webbing mounted attachments that connect to the two lower anchors at the LATCH

equipped seating positions in your vehicle. This type of attachment method eliminates the need to use safety belts to attach the child seat, however the safety belt can still be used to attach the child seat. For forward-facing child seats, the top tether strap must also be attached to the proper top tether anchor, if a top tether strap has been provided with your child seat. Ford Motor Company recommends the use of a child safety seat having a top tether strap. See *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* and *Recommendations for attaching safety restraints for children* in this chapter for more information.



Your vehicle has LATCH lower anchors for child seat installation at the seating positions marked with the child seat symbol.



The LATCH anchors are located at the rear section of the rear seat between the cushion and seatback below the symbols as shown. Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions to properly install a child seat with LATCH attachments.

Follow the instructions on attaching child safety seats with tether straps. Refer to *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* later in this chapter.

Attach LATCH lower attachments of the child seat only to the anchors shown.

WARNING: Never attach two child safety seats to the same anchor. In a crash, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child safety seat attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.



WARNING: Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain safety belt buckle assemblies and/or LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, occupants should only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

Use of inboard lower anchors from the outboard seating positions (center seating use)

The lower anchors at the center of the second row rear seat are spaced 18 inches (450 mm) apart. The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 11 inches (280 mm) center to center. A child seat with rigid LATCH attachments cannot be installed at the center seating position. LATCH compatible child seats (with attachments on belt webbing) can only be used at this seating position provided that the child seat manufacturer's instructions permit use with the anchor spacing stated. Do not attach a child seat to any lower anchor if an adjacent child seat is attached to that anchor.



WARNING: The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 11 inches (280 mm) center to center. Do not use LATCH lower anchors for the center seating position unless the child seat manufacturer's instructions permit and specify using anchors spaced at least as far apart as those in this vehicle.

Each time you use the safety seat, check that the seat is properly attached to the lower anchors and tether anchor, if applicable. Tug the child seat from side to side and forward and back where it is secured to the vehicle. The seat should move less than one inch when you do this for a proper installation.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

Combining safety belt and LATCH lower anchors for attaching child safety seats

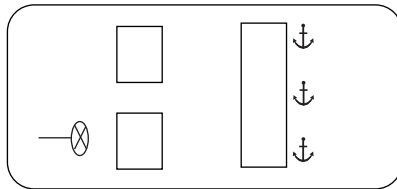
When used in combination, either the safety belt or the LATCH lower anchors may be attached first, provided a proper installation is achieved. Attach the tether strap afterward, if included with the child seat. Refer to *Recommendations for attaching child safety restraints for children* in this chapter.

Attaching child safety seats with tether straps

Many forward-facing child safety seats include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child safety seat and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor.

Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older safety seats. Contact the manufacturer of your child seat for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your safety seat does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in the vehicle.

The rear seats of your vehicle are equipped with built-in tether strap anchors located on the back panel of the rear seat.



The tether strap anchors in your vehicle are in the following positions (shown from top view):

Attach the tether strap only to the appropriate tether anchor as shown. The tether strap may not work properly if attached somewhere other than the correct tether anchor.

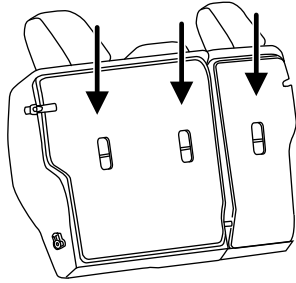
Once the child safety seat has been installed using either the safety belt, the lower anchors of the LATCH system, or both, you can attach the top tether strap.

If you install a child seat with rigid LATCH attachments, do not tighten the tether strap enough to lift the child seat off the vehicle seat cushion when the child is seated in it. Keep the tether strap just snug without lifting the front of the child seat. Keeping the child seat just touching the vehicle seat gives the best protection in a severe crash.

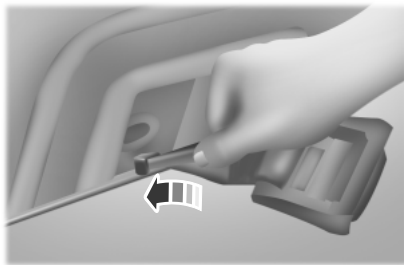
Perform the following steps to install a child safety seat with tether anchors:

1. Route the child safety seat tether strap over the back of the seat.

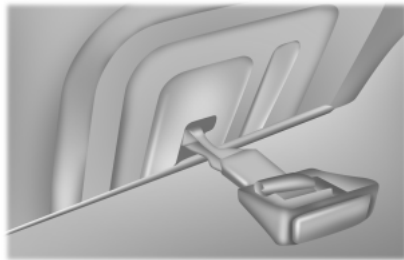
For outboard seating positions, route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts. For the center seating positions, route the tether strap over the top of the head restraint. If needed, the head restraints can also be removed. See *Rear seats* in this chapter.



2. Locate the correct anchor for the selected seating position.



3. Rotate the tether hook, then move the hook under the anchor.



4. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown.

If the tether strap is clipped incorrectly, the child safety seat may not be retained properly in the event of a collision.

5. Tighten the child safety seat tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a collision greatly increases.

If your child restraint system is equipped with a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, Ford also recommends its use.

Child booster seats

The belt-positioning booster (booster seat) is used to improve the fit of the vehicle safety belt. Children outgrow a typical child seat (e.g., convertible or toddler seat) when they weigh about 40 lb (18 kg) and are around four (4) years of age. Consult your child safety seat owner guide for the weight, height, and age limits specific to your child safety seat. Keep your child in the child safety seat if it properly fits the child, remains appropriate for their weight, height and age AND if properly secured to the vehicle.

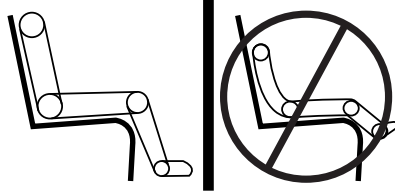
Although the lap/shoulder belt will provide some protection, children who have outgrown a typical child seat are still too small for lap/shoulder belts to fit properly, and wearing an improperly fitted vehicle safety belt could increase the risk of serious injury in a crash. To improve the fit of both the lap and shoulder belt on children who have outgrown child safety seats, Ford Motor Company recommends use of a belt-positioning booster.

Booster seats position a child so that vehicle lap/shoulder safety belts fit better. They lift the child up so that the lap belt rests low across the hips and the knees bend comfortably at the edge of the cushion, while minimizing slouching. Booster seats may also make the shoulder belt fit better and more comfortably. Try to keep the belt near the middle of the shoulder and across the center of the chest. Moving the child closer (a few centimeters or inches) to the center of the vehicle, but remaining in the same seating position, may help provide a good shoulder belt fit.

When children should use booster seats

Children need to use booster seats from the time they outgrow the toddler seat until they are big enough for the vehicle seat and lap/shoulder belt to fit properly. Generally this is when they reach a height of at least 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall (around age eight to age twelve and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) or upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer). Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg).

Booster seats should be used until you can answer YES to ALL of these questions when seated without a booster seat:



- Can the child sit all the way back against the vehicle seat back with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion?
- Can the child sit without slouching?

- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?
- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

Types of booster seats

There are generally two types of belt-positioning booster seats: backless and high back. Always use booster seats in conjunction with the vehicle lap/shoulder belt.



- Backless booster seats
If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield. If a vehicle seating position has a low seat back or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head (as measured at the tops of the ears) above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a

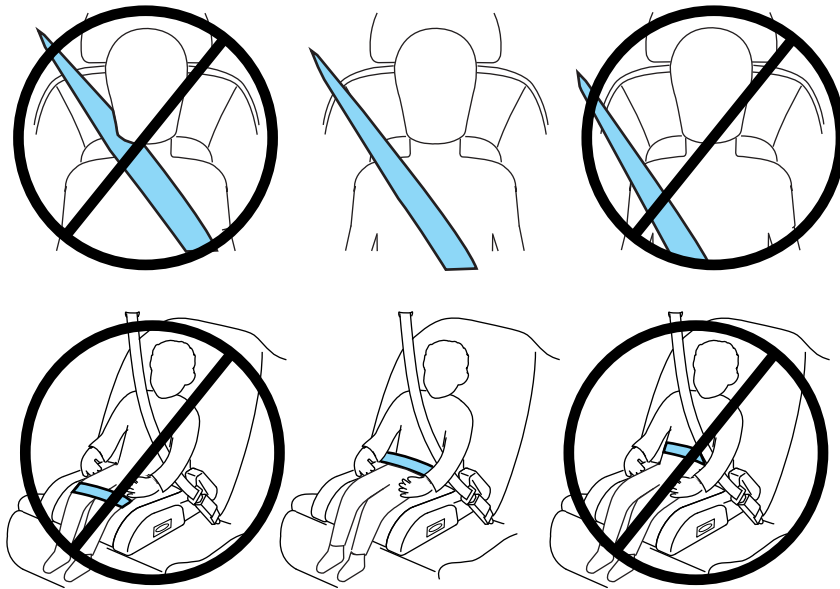
higher seat back or head restraint and lap/shoulder belts, or consider using a high back booster seat.



- High back booster seats

If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high back booster seat would be a better choice.

Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder. The drawings below compare the ideal fit (center) to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder. The drawings below also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.



If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not introduce any item thicker than this under the booster seat. Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

The importance of shoulder belts

Using a booster without a shoulder belt increases the risk of a child's head hitting a hard surface in a collision. For this reason, you should never use a booster seat with a lap belt only. It is generally best to use a booster seat with lap/shoulder belts in the back seat.

Move a child to a different seating location if the shoulder belt does not stay positioned on the shoulder during use.

Follow all instructions provided by the manufacturer of the booster seat.



WARNING: Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a collision.

Child restraint and safety belt maintenance

Inspect the vehicle safety belts and child safety seat systems periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the vehicle and child seat safety belts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All vehicle safety belt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front safety belt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seatback (if equipped), child safety seat LATCH and tether anchors, and attaching hardware, should be inspected after a collision. Refer to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint. Ford Motor Company recommends that all safety belt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a collision be replaced. However, if the collision was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Safety belt assemblies not in use during a collision should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

For proper care of soiled safety belts, refer to *Interior* in the *Cleaning* chapter.

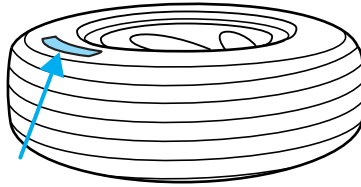


WARNING: Failure to inspect and if necessary replace the safety belt assembly or child restraint system under the above conditions could result in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

IMPORTANT INFORMATION FOR 235/40R18 LOW-PROFILE TIRES AND WHEELS

If your vehicle is equipped with 235/40R18 tires, they are low-profile tires. These tires and wheels are designed to give your vehicle a sport appearance. With low-profile tires, you may notice an increase in road noise and faster tire wear, depending on road conditions and driving styles. Due to their design, low-profile tires and wheels are more prone to road damage from potholes, rough or unpaved roads, car wash rails and curb contact than standard tires and wheels.

Note: Your vehicle's warranty does not cover these types of damage. Tires should always be kept at the correct inflation pressures and extra caution should be taken when operating on rough roads to avoid impacts that could cause wheel and tire damage.

INFORMATION ABOUT UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADING

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

- **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A**

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or "LT" type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104(c)(2).


U.S. Department of Transportation-Tire quality grades: The U.S. Department of Transportation requires Ford Motor Company to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire


graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction AA A B C

 **WARNING:** The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Temperature A B C

 **WARNING:** The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

TIRES

Tires are designed to give many thousands of miles of service, but they must be maintained in order to get the maximum benefit from them.

Glossary of Tire Terminology

- **Tire label:** A label showing the OE (Original Equipment) tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

- **Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.
- **Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.
- **Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at 35 psi [37 psi (2.5 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.
- **Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 41 psi [43 psi (2.9 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.
- **kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.
- **PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.
- **Cold inflation pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mile (1.6 km).
- **Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.
- **B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.
- **Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.
- **Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.
- **Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.
- **Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

INFLATING YOUR TIRES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Remember that a tire can lose up to half of its air pressure without appearing flat.

Every day before you drive, check your tires. If one looks lower than the others, use a tire gauge to check pressure of all tires and adjust if required.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge (including spare, if equipped). Inflate all tires to the inflation pressure recommended by Ford Motor Company.



WARNING: Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or “blowout”, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate. Ford recommends the use of a digital or dial-type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick-type tire pressure gauge.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

Always inflate your tires to the Ford recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. The Ford recommended tire inflation pressure is found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure and/or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

When weather temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 10°F (6°C) temperature drop can cause a corresponding drop of 1 psi (7 kPa) in inflation pressure. Check your tire pressures frequently and adjust them to the proper pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

To check the pressure in your tire(s):

1. Make sure the tires are cool, meaning they are not hot from driving even a mile.

If you are checking tire pressure when the tire is hot, (i.e. driven more than 1 mile [1.6 km]), never “bleed” or reduce air pressure. The tires are hot from driving and it is normal for pressures to increase above recommended cold pressures. A hot tire at or below recommended cold inflation pressure could be significantly under-inflated.

Note: If you have to drive a distance to get air for your tire(s), check and record the tire pressure first and add the appropriate air pressure when you get to the pump. It is normal for tires to heat up and the air pressure inside to go up as you drive.

2. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire, then firmly press the tire gauge onto the valve and measure the pressure.
3. Add enough air to reach the recommended air pressure.

Note: If you overfill the tire, release air by pressing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.

4. Replace the valve cap.
5. Repeat this procedure for each tire, including the spare.

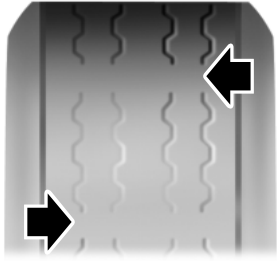
Note: Some spare tires operate at a higher inflation pressure than the other tires. For T-type/mini-spare tires (see the *Dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly information* section for description): Store and maintain at 60 psi (4.15 bar). For full-size and dissimilar spare tires (see the *Dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly information* section for description): Store and maintain at the higher of the front and rear inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label.

6. Visually inspect the tires to make sure there are no nails or other objects embedded that could poke a hole in the tire and cause an air leak.
7. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts or bulges.

TIRE CARE**Inspecting Your Tires and Wheel Valve Stems**

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves. Check the tire and valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that may permit air leakage and repair or replace the tire and replace the valve stem. Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire demounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Improper or inadequate vehicle maintenance can cause tires to wear abnormally. Inspect all your tires, including the spare, frequently, and replace them if one or more of the following conditions exist:

Tire Wear

When the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or “wear bars”, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 mm).

When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these “wear bars”, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.

Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage (such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall). If damage is observed or suspected have the tire inspected by a tire professional. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.

**WARNING: Age**

Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure, etc.) the tires experience throughout their lives. In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently. You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters “DOT” and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Tire Replacement Requirements

WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The recommended tire and wheel size may be found on either the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or the Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or edge of the driver's door. If this information is not found on these labels then you should contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle or transfer case/power transfer unit failure. If you have questions regarding tire replacement, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.



WARNING: When mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.

When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

1. Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
2. Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
3. Stand at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the tire wheel assembly.
4. Use both eye and ear protection.

For a mounting pressure more than 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.

Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the tire wheel assembly.

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.

Important: Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended by Ford Motor Company may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the TPMS indicator is flashing, your TPMS is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your TPMS, or some component of the TPMS may be damaged.

Safety Practices

WARNING: If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., do not rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.



WARNING: Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

- Observe posted speed limits
- Avoid fast starts, stops and turns
- Avoid potholes and objects on the road
- Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking

Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive there's always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

Tire and Wheel Alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you're driving, the wheels may be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer. Front-wheel drive vehicles and those with an independent rear suspension (if equipped) may require alignment of all four wheels.

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

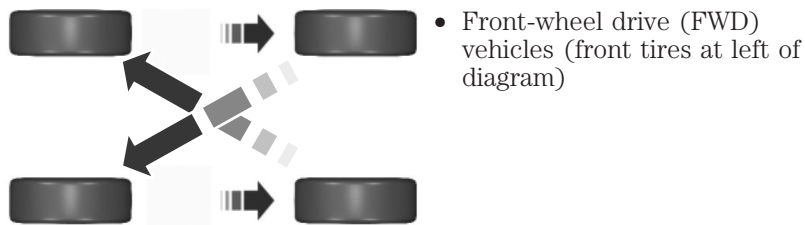
Tire Rotation

Note: If your tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.

Note: Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly. A dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly is defined as a spare tire and wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

Note: After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval (as indicated in the *Scheduled Maintenance* chapter) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

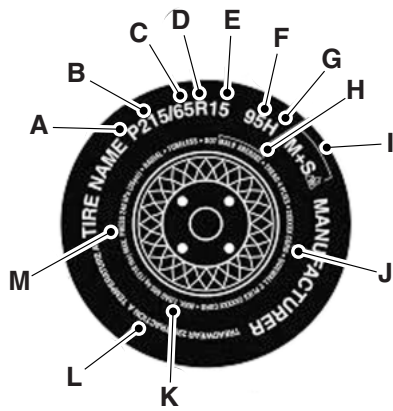


Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

INFORMATION CONTAINED ON THE TIRE SIDEWALL

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

Information on “P” Type Tires



P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

A. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that may be used for service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

Note: If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either ETRTO (European Tire and Rim Technical Organization) or JATMA (Japan Tire Manufacturing Association).

B. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

D. **R:** Indicates a “radial” type tire.

E. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

F. **95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner's manual. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

Note: You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

G. **H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

Note: You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

Letter rating	Speed rating - mph (km/h)
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
Q	99 mph (159 km/h)
R	106 mph (171 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (299 km/h)

Note: For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

H. **U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN):** This begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

I. **M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or

AT: All Terrain, or

AS: All Season.

J. Tire Ply Composition and Material Used: Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

K. Maximum Load: Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. Refer to the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

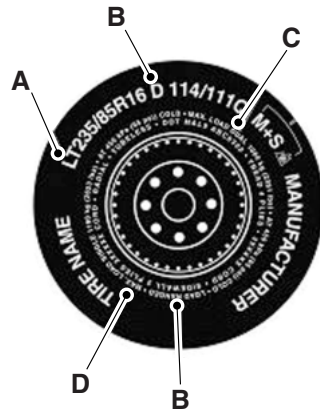
L. Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades

- **Treadwear:** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.
- **Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.
- **Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

M. Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure: Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure and/or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load, radial tubeless, etc.

Additional Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall for “LT” Type Tires



“LT” type tires have some additional information beyond those of “P” type tires; these differences are described below.

Note: Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.

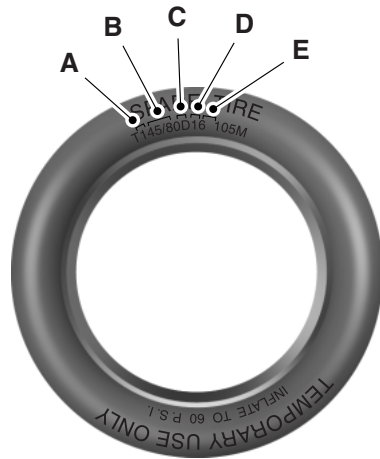
A. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for service on light trucks.

B. **Load Range/Load Inflation Limits:** Indicates the tire’s load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

C. **Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual; defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

D. **Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single; defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

Information on “T” Type Tires



“T” type tires have some additional information beyond those of “P” type tires; these differences are described below:

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

Note: The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.

A. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for temporary service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

B. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire’s ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

D. **D:** Indicates a “diagonal” type tire.

R: Indicates a “radial” type tire.

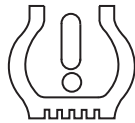
E. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

Location of the Tire Label

You will find a Tire Label containing tire inflation pressure by tire size and other important information located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver’s door. Refer to the payload description and graphic in the *Load Carrying* chapter.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS)

WARNING: The tire pressure monitoring system is NOT a substitute for manually checking tire pressure. The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using a tire gauge, see *Inflating your tires* in this chapter. Failure to properly maintain your tire pressure could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the

vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

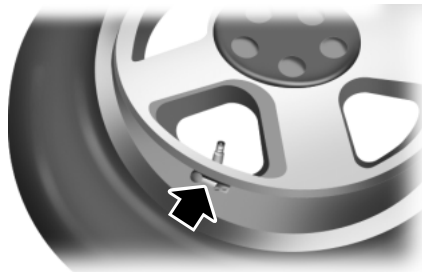
Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of

replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

The tire pressure monitoring system complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changing Tires with a TPMS



Note: Each road tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor located inside the tire and wheel assembly cavity. The pressure sensor is attached to the valve stem. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. Care must be taken when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.

It is recommended that you always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge, refer to *Inflating your tires* in this chapter.

Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The tire pressure monitoring system measures pressure in your four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. The low tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire pressure is significantly low. Once the light is illuminated, your tires are under-inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns on and a short time later turns off, your tire pressure still needs to be checked.

When Your Temporary Spare Tire Is Installed

When one of your road tires needs to be replaced with the temporary spare, the TPMS will continue to identify an issue to remind you that the damaged road wheel/tire needs to be repaired and put back on your vehicle.

To restore the full functionality of the tire pressure monitoring system, have the damaged road wheel/tire repaired and remounted on your vehicle. For additional information, refer to *Changing tires with a TPMS* in this section.

When You Believe Your System Is Not Operating Properly

The main function of the tire pressure monitoring system is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. Please refer to the following chart for information concerning your tire pressure monitoring system:

Low tire pressure warning light	Possible cause	Customer action required
Solid warning light	Tire(s) under-inflated	1. Make sure tires are at the proper pressure. See <i>Inflating your tires</i> in this chapter. 2. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the Tire Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off.
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel/tire and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system functionality. For a description on how the system functions, refer to <i>When your temporary spare tire is installed</i> in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Low tire pressure warning light	Possible cause	Customer action required
Flashing warning light	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel/tire and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system functionality. For a description on how the system functions, refer to <i>When your temporary spare tire is installed</i> in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

When Inflating Your Tires

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the tire pressure monitoring system may not respond immediately to the air added to your tires.

It may take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the light to turn off after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

How Temperature Affects Your Tire Pressure

The tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. While driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure may increase approximately 2 to 4 psi (14 to 28 kPa) from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary overnight with the outside temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure may decrease approximately 3 psi (21 kPa) for a drop of 30°F (17°C) in ambient temperature. This lower pressure value may be detected by the TPMS as being significantly lower than the recommended inflation pressure and activate the TPMS warning light for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is on, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. (If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary.) Check air pressure in the road tires. If any tire is under-inflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

SNOW TIRES

WARNING: Snow tires must be the same size, load index, speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle or transfer case/power transfer unit failure.

Snow chains have not been approved for use on your vehicle.

SUMMER TIRES (IF EQUIPPED)

Summer tires provide superior performance on wet and dry roads. Summer tires do not have the Mud and Snow (M+S or M/S) tire traction rating on the tire side wall. Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as All-season or Snow tires, Ford does not recommend using summer tires when temperatures drop to approximately 40°F (5°C) or below (depending on tire wear and environmental conditions) or in snow/ice conditions. Like any tire, summer tire performance is affected by tire wear and environmental conditions. If you must drive in those conditions, Ford recommends using Mud and Snow (M+S, M/S), All-season or Snow tires.

VEHICLE LOADING


This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings from the vehicle's Tire Label or Safety Compliance Certification Label:

Base Curb Weight – is the weight of the vehicle including full fluids and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

Vehicle Curb Weight – is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your authorized dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.



Payload – is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that the vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle can be found on the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door (vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a Tire Label). Look for **“THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX kg OR XXX lb.”** for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire Label is the maximum payload for the vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If any aftermarket or authorized-dealer installed equipment has been installed on the vehicle, the weight of the equipment must be subtracted from the payload listed on the Tire Label in order to determine the new payload.

 **WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

Example only:

TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION

SEATING CAPACITY TOTAL 5 FRONT 2 REAR 3

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed : **XXX kg or XXX lbs.**

TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE	SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
FRONT	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI	
REAR	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI	
SPARE	T145/80D16 P225/60R17	420 KPA, 60 PSI 200 KPA, 29 PSI	

TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION
RENSEIGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT

SEATING CAPACITY TOTAL 5 FRONT 2 REAR 3
NOMBRE DE PLACES TOTAL 5 AVANT 2 ARRIERE 3

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 492 kg or 1085 lbs.
Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais dépasser 492 kg ou 1085 lbs.

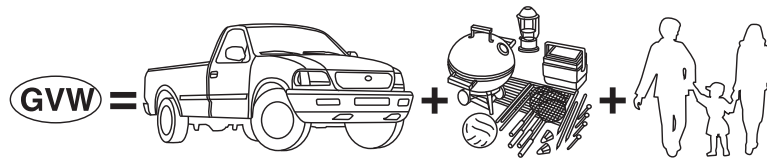
TIRE PNEU	SIZE DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION DES PNEUS A FROID	SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION VOIR LE MANUEL DE L'USAGER POUR PLUS DE RENSEIGNEMENTS
FRONT AVANT	P235/70R16	240 KPA, 35 PSI	
REAR ARRIERE	P235/70R16	240 KPA, 35 PSI	
SPARE DE SECOURS	T145/90R17	415 KPA, 60 PSI	

CARGO =



Cargo Weight – includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment.
GAW (Gross Axle Weight) – is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) – including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

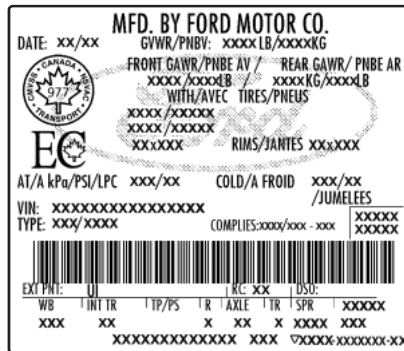
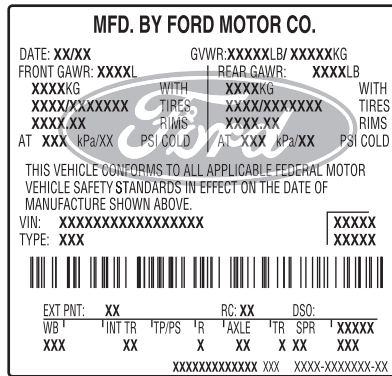
GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating) – is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). **These numbers are shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver’s seating position. The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.**



GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight) – is the Vehicle Curb Weight + cargo + passengers.

GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating) – is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). **The GVWR is shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver’s seating position. The GVW must never exceed the GVWR.**

- Example only:



! **WARNING:** Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification Label vehicle weight rating limits could result in substandard vehicle handling or performance, engine, transmission and/or structural damage, serious damage to the vehicle, loss of control and personal injury.

! **WARNING:** Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the Safety Compliance Certification Label.



WARNING: Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower the vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.



WARNING: Exceeding any vehicle weight rating limitation could result in serious damage to the vehicle and/or personal injury.

Steps for determining the correct load limit:

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. ($1400 - 750 (5 \times 150) = 650$ lb.). In metric units ($635 - 340 (5 \times 68) = 295$ kg.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

The following gives you a few examples on how to calculate the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity:

- Another example for your vehicle with 1400 lb. (635 kg) of cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, 4 of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 lb. (99 kg) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 lb. (13.5 kg) each. The calculation would be: $1400 - (5 \times 220) - (5 \times 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150$ lb. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be: $635 \text{ kg} - (5 \times 99 \text{ kg}) - (5 \times 13.5 \text{ kg}) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5$ kg.
- A final example for your vehicle with 1400 lb. (635 kg) of cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio

you have been planning for the past 2 years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for 12-100 lb. (45 kg) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 lb. (99 kg), the calculation would be: $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (12 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 1200 = -240$ lb. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would be: $635 \text{ kg} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kg}) - (12 \times 45 \text{ kg}) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103$ kg. You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 lb. (104 kg). If you remove 3-100 lb. (45 kg) cement bags, then the load calculation would be:

$1400 - (2 \times 220) - (9 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60$ lb. Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be: $635 \text{ kg} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kg}) - (9 \times 45 \text{ kg}) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32$ kg.

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the Front or the Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position.

TOWING A TRAILER



WARNING: Never tow a trailer with this vehicle. Your vehicle is not equipped to tow. No towing packages are available through an authorized dealer.

RECREATIONAL TOWING

Follow these guidelines if you have a need for recreational (RV) towing. An example of recreational towing would be towing your vehicle behind a motor home.

In case of a roadside emergency with a disabled vehicle, please refer to *Wrecker towing* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

These guidelines are designed to prevent damage to your vehicle.

Do not tow your vehicle with any wheels on the ground, as vehicle or transmission damage may occur. It is recommended to tow your vehicle with all four (4) wheels off the ground such as when using a car-hauling trailer. Otherwise, no recreational towing is permitted.

STARTING**Power Modes**

- Accessory – Press and release the power button without applying the brake pedal. This powers your vehicle's electrical system and the warning lights in the instrument cluster illuminate, but the electric motor remains off.
- Off – Press and release the power button without applying the brake pedal when your vehicle is in accessory mode or when the electric motor is running and the vehicle is not in motion. This position shuts the electric motor and all electrical accessories off.

Note: In order to switch off the electric motor while the vehicle is in motion, press and hold the power button for at least one second or press the power button three times within two seconds. Then, shift to neutral and use the brakes to bring the vehicle to a safe stop. After the vehicle has stopped, shift into park.

- Start – Press the power button (for any length of time) while applying the brake pedal. The green Ready to Drive indicator light appears in the instrument cluster, letting you know that the vehicle is ready for driving.

Important Safety Precautions

Before starting the vehicle:

1. Make sure all occupants buckle their safety belts. For more information on safety belts and their proper usage, refer to the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter.
2. Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
3. Make sure the parking brake is set.
4. Make sure the gearshift is in P (Park).

Some warning lights will briefly illuminate. See *Warning lamps and indicators* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for more information regarding the warning lights.

Push Button Start System

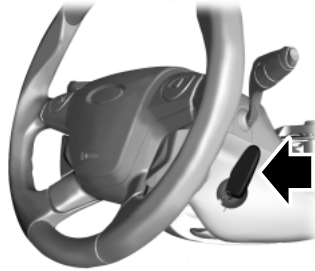
The power button is located on the instrument panel to the right of the steering wheel.

Starting the Vehicle

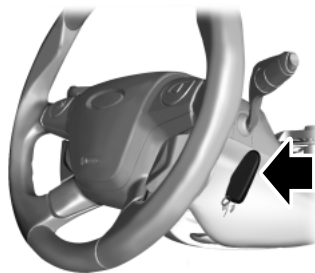
Note: To start your vehicle, your intelligent access key (IA key) must be present inside the vehicle.

1. Press the power button (for any length of time) while applying the brake pedal.
2. Release the parking brake, apply the brake, shift into gear and drive.

There may be areas inside your vehicle where the IA key is not detected. If the message KEY NOT DETECTED appears on your multifunction display when you press the power button, it may be necessary to move your IA key to another area within the vehicle. The IA key may not be detected near the roof (between the driver or passenger sun visor and the roof, or in the overhead console area) or in the extreme corners of the rear package tray, near your audio speakers. It is not recommended that you stow the IA key in these locations. If you move the IA key to a location where it has been detected before and you still see the KEY NOT DETECTED message, your IA key's battery may be low or you may be in an area with excessive radio frequency interference. If this occurs, you can use the backup method to start your vehicle.



Type 1



Type 2

Backup Starting Method

Your IA key uses a radio frequency signal to communicate with your vehicle and authorize your vehicle to start when you press the power button and apply the brake pedal. If excessive radio frequency interference is present in the area, or if the battery in your IA key is low, it may be necessary to start your car by placing the IA key at the backup location on the steering column. After placing the IA key at the backup location, use the power button and brake pedal to start your vehicle as usual. The vehicle should respond normally as long as the IA key is at the backup location on the steering column. Once the vehicle is started, the IA key can be moved from the backup location, if desired.

Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to re-start your vehicle within 10 seconds of switching the vehicle off, if a valid IA key is not present when the vehicle is switched off. You can re-start the vehicle (by applying the brake pedal and pressing the power button) for up to 10 seconds, even though the IA key is not present. After 10 seconds have expired, you can no longer start your vehicle without the IA key present inside the vehicle. If the driver door is opened within this 10 seconds, the fast restart timer expires immediately.

Switching the Vehicle Off When Not in P (Park)

It is recommended that you shift into the P (Park) position before switching your vehicle off. If you switch your vehicle off with the shifter in any position other than P (Park), the message SHIFT TO PARK is displayed in the multifunction display. If the vehicle is left in this state, your key in ignition chime activates when the driver door is opened, and you may drain your vehicle's battery. In order to avoid draining your battery, it is recommended that you always shift to P (Park) before or immediately after switching your vehicle off.

Absence of the Intelligent Access Key

Once the vehicle has started, the vehicle remains running until being turned off by the power button, even if the IA key is no longer found in the vehicle. Whenever a door is opened and then closed while the vehicle is running, the system searches for an IA key inside the vehicle and the multifunction display reads KEY OUTSIDE CAR if the IA key is no longer present. This message is a reminder that someone else in the vehicle may have taken the IA key when exiting the vehicle. If the IA key is no longer present in the vehicle, you cannot start your vehicle outside of the Fast Restart time (see *Fast restart* above). It is important to be aware of where your IA key is located in the vehicle, to avoid becoming stranded without an IA key.

BRAKES

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out and should be inspected by an authorized dealer. If the vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, the vehicle should be inspected by an authorized dealer.



Refer to *Warning lights and indicators* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for information on the brake system warning light.

Under normal operating conditions, brake dust may accumulate on the wheels. Some brake dust is inevitable as brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. The use of modern friction materials with emphasis on improved performance and environmental considerations can lead to more dust than in the past. Brake dust can be cleaned by weekly washing with soapy water and a soft sponge. Heavier deposits can be removed with Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner. See the *Cleaning* chapter for more information.

Four-wheel anti-lock brake system (ABS)

Your vehicle is equipped with an anti-lock braking system (ABS). This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking. Noise from the ABS pump motor and brake pedal pulsation may be observed during ABS braking and the brake pedal may suddenly travel a little farther as soon as ABS braking is done and normal brake operation resumes. These are normal characteristics of the ABS and should be no reason for concern.

Using ABS

When hard braking is required, apply continuous force on the brake pedal. Do not pump the brake pedal since this will reduce the effectiveness of the ABS and will increase your vehicle's stopping distance. The ABS will be activated immediately, allowing you to retain steering control during hard braking and on slippery surfaces. However, the ABS does not decrease stopping distance.

Brake assist

The brake assist system provides full braking force during panic braking situations. It detects a rapid application of the brake pedal and uses the ABS system to achieve maximum braking pressure. Once a panic brake application is detected, the system will remain activated as long as the brake pedal is pressed or ABS is engaged. The system is deactivated by either releasing the brake pedal or coming to a complete stop. When the system activates, noise from the ABS pump motor and brake pedal pulsation may be observed; this is normal.

ABS warning lamp

The ABS lamp in the instrument cluster momentarily illuminates when the ignition is turned on. If the light does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the ABS may be disabled and may need to be serviced.



Even when the ABS is disabled, normal braking is still effective. (If your BRAKE warning lamp illuminates with the parking brake released, have your brake system serviced immediately.)

Regenerative braking system

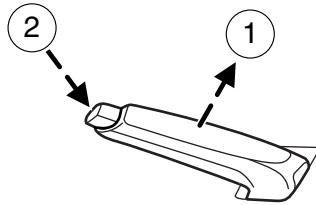
Your vehicle uses a feature known as regenerative braking. This is used to simulate the engine braking of an internal combustion engine and assist the standard brake system while recovering some of the energy of motion and storing it in the battery to improve fuel economy. The standard brake system is designed to fully stop the car if regenerative braking is not available. During regenerative braking, the motor is spun as a generator to create electrical current. This recharges the battery and slows the vehicle. In effect, once the accelerator pedal is released, the motor changes from an energy user to an energy producer.

When the accelerator pedal is released or the brake pedal is applied, the brake controller automatically detects the amount of deceleration requested and optimizes how much of the deceleration will be produced by regenerative braking. The remaining portion is generated by standard friction braking. When the battery is almost fully charged, the amount of regenerative braking is limited to avoid overcharging, and the requested deceleration is produced by standard friction braking alone.

Regenerative braking does not take the place of the standard friction brakes; it only assists them. Regenerative braking has also been designed to interact with the anti-lock brake system. Regenerative braking is disabled when the anti-lock brake system is activated or the battery is fully charged.

Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce motor power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Turn the motor off, shift to P (Park) and apply the parking brake, and then inspect the accelerator pedal for any interferences. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

Parking brake

To set the parking brake (1), pull the parking brake handle up as far as possible.



The BRAKE warning lamp will illuminate and will remain illuminated until the parking brake is released.

To release, press and hold the button (2), pull the handle up slightly, then push the handle down.



WARNING: Always set the parking brake fully and make sure that the gearshift is securely latched in P (Park).



WARNING: If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

ADVANCETRAC® STABILITY ENHANCEMENT SYSTEM

The AdvanceTrac® system provides the following stability enhancement features for certain driving situations:

- Traction control system (TCS), which functions to help avoid drive-wheel spin and loss of traction.
- Electronic stability control (ESC), which functions to help avoid skids or lateral slides



WARNING: Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and/or wheel/tire size may change the handling characteristics of the vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the AdvanceTrac® system. In addition, installing any stereo loudspeakers may interfere with and adversely affect the AdvanceTrac® system. Install any aftermarket stereo loudspeaker as far as possible from the front center console, the tunnel, and the front seats in order to minimize the risk of interfering with the AdvanceTrac® sensors. Reducing the effectiveness of the AdvanceTrac® system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the AdvanceTrac® system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If your AdvanceTrac® system activates, SLOW DOWN.



WARNING: If a failure has been detected within the AdvanceTrac® system, the stability control light will illuminate steadily. Have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately.

The AdvanceTrac® system automatically enables each time the motor is started. All features of the AdvanceTrac® system (TCS and ESC) are active and monitor the vehicle from start-up. However, the system will only intervene if the driving situation requires it.

The AdvanceTrac® system includes a stability control light in the instrument cluster. The stability control light in the instrument cluster will illuminate temporarily during start-up as part of a normal system self-check, or during driving if a driving situation causes the AdvanceTrac® system to operate. If the stability control light illuminates steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately.

When AdvanceTrac® performs a normal system self-check, some drivers may notice a slight movement of the brake, and/or a rumble, grunting, or grinding noise after startup and when driving off.

When an event occurs that activates AdvanceTrac®, you may experience the following:

- A slight deceleration of the vehicle
- The stability control light will flash.
- A vibration in the pedal when your foot is on the brake pedal
- If the driving condition is severe and your foot is not on the brake, the brake pedal may move as the systems applies higher brake forces. You may also hear a whoosh of air from under the instrument panel during this severe condition.
- The brake pedal may feel stiffer than usual.

Traction control system (TCS)

Traction control is a driver aid feature that helps your vehicle maintain traction of the wheels, typically when driving on slippery and/or hilly road surfaces, by detecting and controlling wheel spin.

Excessive wheel spin is controlled in two ways, which may work separately or in tandem, motor traction control and brake traction control. Motor traction control works to limit drive-wheel spin by momentarily reducing motor power. Brake traction control works to limit wheel spin by momentarily applying the brakes to the wheel that is slipping. Traction control is most active at low speeds.

During TCS events, the stability control light in the instrument cluster will flash.

If the TCS is activated excessively in a short period of time, the braking portion of the system may become temporarily disabled to allow the brakes to cool down. In this situation, TCS will use only motor power reduction or transfer to help control the wheels from over-spinning. When the brakes have cooled down, the system will regain all features. Anti-lock braking, and ESC are not affected by this condition and will continue to function during the cool-down period.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

Electronic stability control (ESC) may enhance your vehicle's directional stability during adverse maneuvers, for example when cornering severely or avoiding objects in the roadway. ESC operates by applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually and, if necessary, reducing power if the system detects that the vehicle is about to skid or slide laterally.

During ESC events, the stability control light in the instrument cluster will flash.

Certain adverse driving maneuvers may activate the ESC system, which include but are not limited to:

- Taking a turn too fast
- Maneuvering quickly to avoid an accident, pedestrian or obstacle
- Driving over a patch of ice or other slippery surfaces
- Changing lanes on a snow-rutted road
- Entering a snow-free road from a snow-covered side street, or vice versa
- Entering a paved road from a gravel road, or vice versa

Switching off traction control

If the vehicle is stuck in snow, mud or sand, and seems to lose power, switching off the traction control feature of the AdvanceTrac® system may be beneficial because the wheels are allowed to spin. This will restore full power and will enhance momentum through the obstacle.

The traction control system can be turned off through the message center. See *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for more information. If you switch off the traction control, the stability control off light will illuminate steadily. Selecting traction control on will turn off the stability control off light.

Steering

Your vehicle is equipped with an Electric Power Steering (EPS) system. There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.

If your vehicle loses electrical power while you are driving (or if the ignition is turned off), you can steer the vehicle manually, but it takes more effort. Under extreme usage conditions, the steering effort may increase. This occurs to prevent overheating and permanent damage to your steering system. If this should occur, you will neither lose the ability to steer the vehicle manually nor will it cause permanent damage. Typical steering and driving maneuvers will allow the system to cool and steering assist will return to normal.

The EPS system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the EPS system to ensure proper operation. When a system error is detected, the following message STEERING ASSIST FAULT SERVICE REQUIRED, STEERING FAULT SERVICE NOW, STEERING LOSS STOP SAFELY may display in the multifunction display. Refer to the *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for more information.



WARNING: The EPS has diagnostics checks that continuously monitor the EPS to ensure proper operation of the electronic system. When an electronic error is detected, the message STEERING ASSIST FAULT SERVICE REQUIRED will be displayed in the message center. If this happens, stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the engine. After at least 10 seconds, reset the system by restarting the engine, and watch the message center for STEERING ASSIST FAULT SERVICE REQUIRED. If the message returns, or returns while driving, take the vehicle to your dealer to have it checked. With the message displayed, the steering assist is turned off, making the vehicle harder to steer.

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- an improperly inflated tire.
- uneven tire wear.
- loose or worn suspension components.
- loose or worn steering components.
- improper steering alignment.

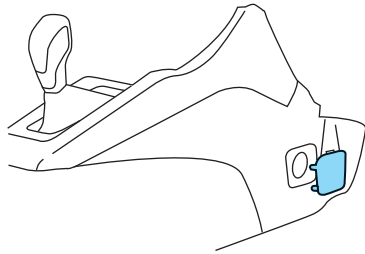
A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander/pull.

Brake-shift interlock

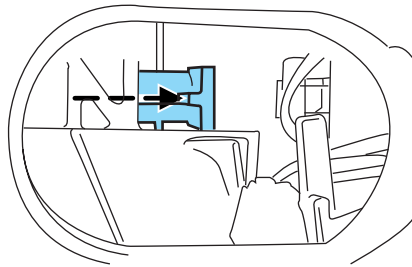
This vehicle is equipped with a brake-shift interlock feature that prevents the gearshift lever from being moved from P (Park) when the ignition is in the on position unless the brake pedal is pressed, your charge cord may be plugged into the vehicle, or there may be a fault with the associated electrical system. If this is the case, you must follow the instructions in your instrument cluster display before your vehicle will start.

If you cannot move the gearshift lever out of P (Park) with ignition on and the brake pedal pressed, it is also possible that a fuse has blown or the vehicle's brake lamps are not operating properly. Refer to *Fuses and relays* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

If your charge cord is not connected and there is not a fault with the associated electrical system, the fuse is not blown and the brake lamps are working properly, the following procedure will allow you to move the gearshift lever from P (Park):



1. Apply the parking brake, turn the ignition key to the off position and remove the key.
2. Using a screwdriver (or similar tool), carefully pry off and remove the passenger side access cover. Remove the fastener, then remove the console side panel to expose the inside of the shifter assembly.



3. Locate the brake shift interlock lever on the passenger side of the shifter assembly.
4. Apply the brake pedal. Using a screwdriver (or similar tool), press and hold the white brake shift interlock lever forward while pulling the gearshift lever out of the P (Park) position and into the N (Neutral) position.
5. Reinstall the console side panel and attach the fastener.
6. Reinstall the access cover.
7. Apply the brake pedal, start the vehicle and release the parking brake.


See your authorized dealer as soon as possible if this procedure is used.




WARNING: Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brake lamps are working.



WARNING: When doing this procedure, you will be taking the vehicle out of park which means the vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully set the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheel chocks if appropriate.

 **WARNING:** If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer.

SINGLE-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

 **WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift lever is latched in P (Park).

The single-speed transmission is built specifically to handle the high RPM range that comes with an all-electric motor.



P (Park)

Note: The vehicle can only be started in P (Park).

This position locks the transmission and prevents the front wheels from turning.

To put your vehicle in gear:

- Press the brake pedal.

- Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear.

To put your vehicle in P (Park):

- Come to a complete stop.
- Move the gearshift lever and securely latch it in P (Park).

R (Reverse)

With the gearshift lever in R (Reverse), the vehicle will move backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of R (Reverse).

N (Neutral)

With the gearshift lever in N (Neutral), the vehicle can be started and is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

D (Drive)

The normal driving position for your vehicle. The transmission operates in a single gear built specifically to handle the high RPM range that comes with an all-electric motor.

L (Low)

- Provides maximum motor braking.
- Is not intended for use under extended or normal driving conditions and results in less miles per charge.
- The transmission may be shifted into L (Low) at any vehicle speed.

HILL START ASSIST

WARNING: The hill start assist feature does not replace the parking brake. When you leave the vehicle, always apply the parking brake and shift the transmission into P (Park).



WARNING: You must remain in the vehicle once you have activated the hill start assist feature.



WARNING: During all times, you are responsible for controlling the vehicle, supervising the hill start assist system and intervening, if required.



WARNING: If the motor is revved excessively, or if a malfunction is detected when the hill start assist feature is active, the hill start assist feature will be deactivated.

The hill start assist feature makes it easier to pull away when the vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake. When the hill start assist feature is active, the vehicle will remain stationary on the slope for up to two seconds after you release the brake pedal. During this time, you have time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal and pull away. The brakes are released automatically once the motor has developed sufficient drive to prevent the vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope; for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.

The hill start assist feature is activated automatically when the vehicle is stopped on a slope greater than five degrees. The hill start assist feature operates with the vehicle facing downhill if reverse gear is selected. The hill start assist feature will not operate if the parking brake is activated.

To activate hill start assist, do the following:

1. Press the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed.

2. If the sensors detect that the vehicle is on a slope, the hill start assist feature will be activated automatically.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, the vehicle will remain on the slope without rolling away for approximately up to two seconds. This hold time will automatically be extended if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Drive off in the normal manner. The brakes will be released automatically.

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck in Mud or Snow

Note: Do not rock the vehicle if the motor is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.

Note: Excessive rocking of the vehicle may eventually cause a loss of power as the powertrain protects against overheating or damage.

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

REVERSE SENSING SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The Reverse Sensing System (RSS) sounds a tone to warn the driver of obstacles near the rear bumper when R (Reverse) is selected and the vehicle is moving at speeds less than 3 mph (5 km/h). The system is not effective at speeds above 3 mph (5 km/h) and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.



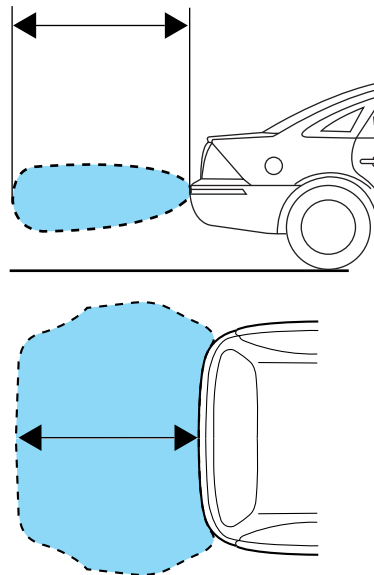
WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, please read and understand the limitations of the reverse sensing system as contained in this section. Sensing is only an aid for some (generally large and fixed) objects when moving in reverse on a flat surface at parking speeds. Traffic control systems, inclement weather, air brakes, and external motors and fans may also affect the function of the sensing system; this may include reduced performance or a false activation.



WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in R (Reverse) and when using the sensing system.

! **WARNING:** This system is not designed to prevent contact with small or moving objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist the driver in detecting large stationary objects to avoid damaging the vehicle. The system may not detect smaller objects, particularly those close to the ground.

! **WARNING:** Certain add-on devices such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks and any device that may block the normal detection zone of the forward and reverse sensing system may create false beeps.



The system detects obstacles up to 6 ft (2 m) from the rear bumper with a decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper, (refer to the illustration for approximate zone coverage areas). As you move closer to the obstacle, the rate of the tone increases. When the obstacle is less than 10 inches (25 cm) away, the tone will sound continuously. If the system detects a stationary or receding object further than 10 inches (25 cm) from the side of the vehicle, the tone will sound for only three seconds. Once the system detects an object approaching, the tone will sound again.

While receiving a detection warning, the radio volume will be reduced to a predetermined level. After the warning goes away, the radio will return to the previous value.

The system is automatically turns on when the gearshift lever is placed in R (Reverse) and the ignition is on. A control in the message center allows the driver to disable the system. Refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for more information.

Note: If the system cannot be turned off, refer to *MyKey™* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

Keep the sensors (located on the rear bumper/fascia) free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt (do not clean the sensors with sharp objects). If the sensors are covered, it will affect the accuracy of the system.

If your vehicle sustains damage to the rear bumper/fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alarms.

REARVIEW CAMERA SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



The rear video camera system, located in the rear of the vehicle above the license plate, provides a video image of the area behind the vehicle. It adds assistance to the driver while reversing or reverse parking the vehicle. To use the rear video camera system, place the transmission in R (Reverse). An image will display on the touchscreen display. The area displayed on the

screen may vary according to the vehicle orientation and/or road condition.

The rear video camera includes the following features that will assist the driver in reverse driving.

Active guidelines, fixed guidelines and centerline

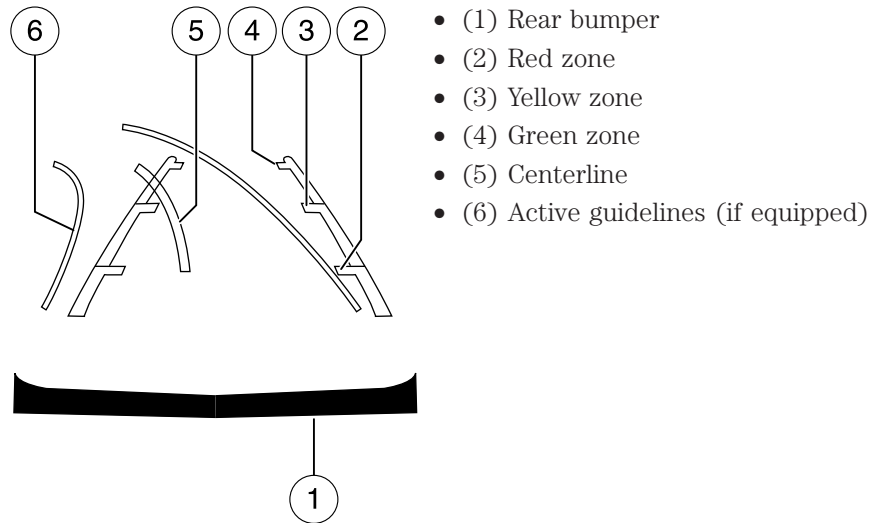
The active guidelines show the path of intended motion of the vehicle while reversing. The fixed guidelines assist a driver with backing into a parking space or aligning with an object behind the vehicle. The centerline assists a driver with aligning the center of the vehicle with an object (i.e. trailer).

To turn this feature on or off when the vehicle is not in R (Reverse), do the following on the touchscreen:

1. Select Menu
2. Select Vehicle
3. Select Rear View Camera

The guideline options are ACTIVE + FIXED, FIXED and OFF.

Note: The centerline is available if Active or Fixed guidelines are ON.



Active guidelines (6) will only be shown with fixed guidelines (2), (3) and (4).

To use active guidelines, turn the steering wheel and point the active guidelines towards an intended path. If the steering wheel position is changed while reversing, the vehicle might deviate from the original intended path.

Active guidelines project the intended path of the vehicle. Fixed guidelines show the actual direction the vehicle is moving. The fixed and active guidelines will fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. When the steering wheel position is straight, the active guidelines will not be shown.

Always use caution while backing. Objects in the red zone (2) are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone (4) are further away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone (4) to the yellow (3) or red zones (2). Use the side mirrors and rearview mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of the vehicle.

Visual park aid alert (if equipped)

Visual park aid alert allows the driver to see the area that is causing the reverse sensing system to beep. The visual alerts are red, yellow or green highlights which appear on top of the video image when an object is detected by the reverse sensing system. The visual alert will highlight the closest object detected by the reverse sensing system. The reverse sensing alert can be disabled and if visual park aid alert is enabled, highlighted areas will still be displayed.

To turn this feature on or off when the vehicle is not in R (Reverse), do the following on the touchscreen:

1. Select Menu
2. Select Vehicle
3. Select Rear View Camera

The visual park aid alert options are ON and OFF.

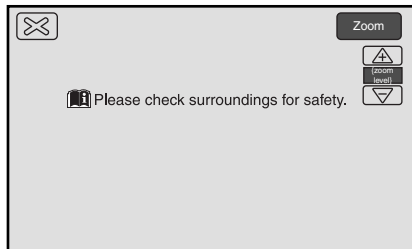
Note: The reverse sensing system is not effective at speeds above 3 mph (5 km/h) and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.

Manual zoom

The manual zoom feature assists drivers with connecting their vehicle to a trailer for the purpose of towing. It allows the driver to manually zoom closer to an object behind the vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference.

Press ▲ or ▼ to manually adjust the zoom levels. You can choose from OFF, Level 1, Level 2 and Level 3. The selected level will appear between the buttons (i.e. Level 1). When activating manual zoom mode, the system always starts from OFF.

When enabled, Level 1, Level 2, or Level 3 will only be active while the vehicle is in R (Reverse). The feature disables outside of R (Reverse) and must be re-enabled the next time the vehicle shifts into R (Reverse).



When manual zoom is enabled, only the centerline will be shown.

Rear camera delay

After shifting out of R (Reverse) and into any gear other than P (Park), the image will remain until the vehicle speed reaches five mph (8 km/h). This will only occur if the rear camera delay feature is on, or until any radio button is selected.

The default setting for the rear camera delay is OFF. To turn this feature on or off when the vehicle is not in R (Reverse), do the following:

1. Select Menu
2. Select Vehicle
3. Select Rear View Camera

The rear camera delay options are ON and OFF.

The camera lens for the reverse camera system is located on the liftgate. Keep the lens clean so the video image remains clear and undistorted. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.


When towing, the reverse camera system will only see what is being towed behind the vehicle. This might not provide adequate coverage as it usually provides in normal operation and some objects might not be seen.


Active guidelines, fixed guidelines, visual park aid alert and manual zoom features are only available when the vehicle is in R (Reverse).


If the vehicle is in R (Reverse) and the liftgate is ajar, no rear video camera features will be displayed. A message will be displayed on the touchscreen if the liftgate is ajar.


After activating or deactivating a rear video camera feature, the touchscreen will show a preview of the feature(s) selected.


Note: If the camera system image is not clear or seems distorted, it may be covered with water droplets, snow, mud or any other substance. If this occurs, clean the camera lens before using the camera system.


 **WARNING:** The rearview camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the rearview mirror and the side mirrors for maximum coverage.

 **WARNING:** Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

 **WARNING:** Backup as slow as possible since higher speeds might limit your reaction time to stop the vehicle.

 **WARNING:** When manual zoom is enabled (Level 1, Level 2 or Level 3), the full area behind the vehicle will not be shown. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

 **WARNING:** Use caution when using the rear video camera and the liftgate is ajar. If the liftgate is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image may be incorrect. All guidelines (if enabled) have been removed when the liftgate is ajar.

 **WARNING:** Use caution when turning ON or OFF camera features while in R (Reverse). Make sure the vehicle is not moving.

If the back end of the vehicle is hit or damaged, then check with your authorized dealer to have your rear video system checked for proper coverage and operation.

Night time and dark area use

At night time or in dark areas, the camera system relies on the reverse lamp lighting to produce an image. Therefore, it is necessary that both reverse lamps are operating in order to get a clear image in the dark. If either of the lamps are not operating, stop using the camera system, at least in the dark, until the lamp(s) are replaced and functioning.

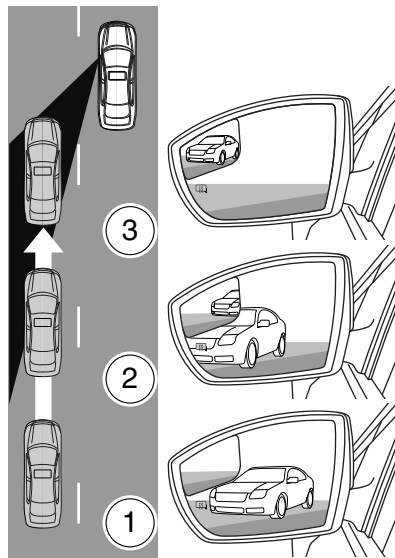
Servicing

- If the image comes on while the vehicle is not in R (Reverse), have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.

- If the image is not clear, check if anything is covering the lens such as dirt, mud, ice, snow, etc. If the image is still not clear after cleaning, have your system inspected by your authorized dealer.

BLIND SPOT MIRRORS

Blind spot mirrors have an integrated convex spotter mirror built into the upper outboard corner of the outside mirrors. They are designed to assist the driver by increasing visibility along the side of the vehicle. For more information on your side view mirrors, refer to *Exterior mirrors* in the *Driver Controls* chapter.



Driving with blind spot mirrors

Before a lane change, check the main mirror first, then check the blind spot mirror. If no vehicles are present in the blind spot mirror and the traffic in the adjacent lane is at a safe distance, signal that you are going to change lanes. Glance over your shoulder to verify traffic is clear, and carefully change lanes.

When the approaching vehicle is at a distance, its image is small and near the inboard edge of the main mirror. As the vehicle approaches, the image becomes larger and begins to move outboard across the main mirror (1). As the vehicle approaches its image will transition from the main mirror and begin to appear in the blind spot mirror (2).

As the vehicle leaves the blind spot mirror it will transition to the driver's peripheral field of view (3).

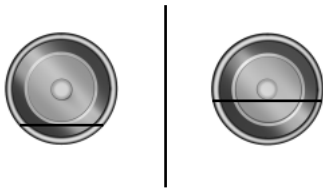


WARNING: Objects in the blind spot mirror are closer than they appear.

DRIVING THROUGH WATER

Note: Driving through deep water may allow water into the transmission and motor causing internal damage. Have the fluid checked and, if water is found, replace the fluid.

Do not drive quickly through standing water, especially if the depth is unknown. Traction or brake capability may be limited and if enough water is present, the vehicle may stall.



If driving through deep or standing water is unavoidable, proceed very slowly. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the wheel rims.

Once through the water, always try the brakes. Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as effectively as dry brakes. Drying can be improved by moving your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal.

ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE**Vehicles sold in the U.S. : Getting roadside assistance**

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. The service is available:

- 24-hours, seven days a week
- for the coverage period listed on the Roadside Assistance Card included in your Owner manual portfolio.

Roadside assistance will cover:

- a flat tire change with a good spare (except vehicles that have been supplied with a tire inflation kit).
- battery jump start.
- lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the customer's responsibility).
- fuel delivery – Independent Service Contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law shall deliver up to 2.0 gallons (7.5L) of gasoline or 5.0 gallons (18.9L) of diesel fuel to a disabled vehicle. Fuel delivery service is limited to two no-charge occurrences within a 12-month period.
- winch out – available within 100 feet (30.5 meters) of a paved or county maintained road, no recoveries.
- towing – Ford and Lincoln eligible vehicles towed to an authorized dealer within 35 miles (56 km) of the disablement location or to the nearest authorized dealer. If a member requests to be towed to an authorized dealer more than 35 miles (56 km) from the disablement location, the member shall be responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 35 miles (56 km).

Trailers shall be covered up to \$200 if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer. If the trailer is disabled, but the towing vehicle is operational, the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

Vehicles sold in the U.S. : Using roadside assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. This card is found in the owner's manual portfolio in the glove compartment.

U.S. Ford vehicle customers who require Roadside Assistance, call 1-800-241-3673.

If you need to arrange roadside assistance for yourself, Ford Motor Company will reimburse a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest dealership within 35 miles (56 km). To obtain reimbursement information, U.S. Ford vehicle customers call 1-800-241-3673. Customers will be asked to submit their original receipts.

Vehicles sold in Canada : Getting roadside assistance

Canadian customers who require roadside assistance, call 1-800-665-2006.

Vehicles sold in Canada : Using roadside assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. In Canada, the card is found in the warranty information in the glove box.

Canadian Roadside coverage and benefits may differ from the U.S. coverage. Please refer to your warranty information or visit our website at www.ford.ca for information on Canadian services and benefits.

Canadian customers who need to obtain roadside information, call 1-800-665-2006 or visit our website at www.ford.ca.

HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS

The hazard flasher control is located on the instrument panel by the radio. Use it when your vehicle is disabled and is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

- Press the flasher control and all front and rear direction signals will flash.
- Press the flasher control again to turn them off.

Note: With extended use, the flashers may run down your 12 volt battery.

HIGH-VOLTAGE SHUTOFF

In the event of a crash:

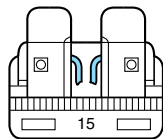
- Take the same actions as you would take in a crash involving a gasoline-powered vehicle — exit the vehicle safely or await the assistance of an emergency responder if they are unable to get out on their own, move a safe distance away from the vehicle, and notify the authorities of the crash.
- If possible, inform emergency responders that the vehicle is electric powered.
- Vehicle owners should not store a severely damaged vehicle in a garage or near other vehicles.

The high-voltage shutoff operation shuts off power from the high voltage battery after a collision, or if your vehicle receives a substantial physical jolt.

To reactivate the vehicle after either event perform the following steps:

1. Press the POWER START/STOP button to power the vehicle on.
2. Press the POWER START/STOP button to power the vehicle off.
3. Press the POWER START/STOP button to power the vehicle on again.

Note: After completing this procedure the vehicle will detect if the electrical system is safe and reactivate automatically. Once your vehicle determines the electrical system safe you can start your vehicle as you would normally by pressing the brake pedal in combination with the POWER START/STOP button.

FUSES AND RELAYS**Fuses**

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

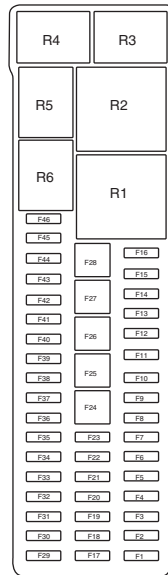
Note: Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

Standard Fuse Amperage Rating and Color

COLOR					
Fuse rating	Mini fuses	Standard fuses	Maxi fuses	Cartridge maxi fuses	Fuse link cartridge
2A	Grey	Grey	—	—	—
3A	Violet	Violet	—	—	—
4A	Pink	Pink	—	—	—
5A	Tan	Tan	—	—	—
7.5A	Brown	Brown	—	—	—
10A	Red	Red	—	—	—
15A	Blue	Blue	—	—	—
20A	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow	Blue	Blue
25A	Natural	Natural	—	Natural	Natural
30A	Green	Green	Green	Pink	Pink
40A	—	—	Orange	Green	Green
50A	—	—	Red	Red	Red
60A	—	—	Blue	Yellow	Yellow
70A	—	—	Tan	—	Brown
80A	—	—	Natural	Black	Black

Luggage Compartment Fuse Panel

The fuse panel is located in the luggage compartment behind the left side wheel well. Remove the fuse panel cover to gain access to the fuses.



The fuses are coded as follows:

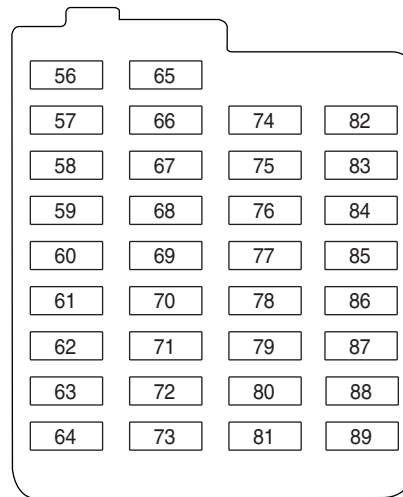
Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
F1	5A	Telematics control unit
F2	10A	Keyless vehicle module
F3	5A	Keyless vehicle door handles
F4	25A	Door control unit – front left
F5	25A	Door control unit – front right
F6	25A	Door control unit – rear left
F7	25A	Door control unit – rear right
F8	—	Not used
F9	25A	Driver seat motor

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
F10	25A	Rear window defroster
F11	5A	Battery electronics control module
F12	—	Not used
F13	—	Not used
F14	—	Not used
F15	—	Not used
F16	—	Not used
F17	—	Not used
F18	—	Not used
F19	—	Not used
F20	—	Not used
F21	—	Not used
F22	—	Not used
F23	—	Not used
F24	—	Not used
F25	—	Not used
F26	—	Not used
F27	—	Not used
F28	—	Not used
F29	5A	Park assist camera
F30	5A	Parking aid module
F31	—	Not used
F32	—	Not used
F33	—	Not used
F34	15A	Driver seat heater
F35	15A	Passenger seat heater
F36	—	Not used
F37	—	Not used
F38	—	Not used
F39	—	Not used

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
F40	—	Not used
F41	—	Not used
F42	—	Not used
F43	—	Not used
F44	—	Not used
F45	—	Not used
F46	—	Not used
R1	—	Rear 15 relay
R2	—	Rear window defrost relay
R3	—	Rear wiper relay
R4	—	Not used
R5	—	Not used
R6	—	Not used

Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel

The fuse panel is located on the right side below the glove box.



The fuses are coded as follows:

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
56	20A	Not used (spare)
57	—	Not used
58	—	Not used
59	5A	Passive anti-theft transceiver
60	10A	Interior light, Driver door switch pack, Glove box illumination, Overhead console switch bank
61	20A	Cigar lighter, Power point
62	5A	Rain sensor module
63	—	Not used

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
64	—	Not used
65	10A	Liftgate release
66	20A	Not used (spare)
67	7.5A	SYNC®, Multifunction display, Global positioning system module, Compass
68	—	Not used
69	5A	Instrument cluster
70	20A	Central lock and unlock supply
71	10A	Climate control
72	7.5A	Steering wheel module
73	5A	Datalink connector
74	15A	Low beam headlamp supply
75	15A	Not used (spare)
76	10A	Reversing lamp supply, Electrochromatic rear view mirror
77	20A	Windshield and rear washer supply
78	5A	Ignition switch, Start button
79	15A	Radio, Hazard light switch, Door lock switch, Electronic finish panel
80	20A	Not used (spare)
81	5A	Radio frequency receiver
82	20A	Windshield and rear washer relay
83	20A	Central locking
84	20A	Unlock supply, Double lock
85	7.5A	Front seat heater switch
86	10A	Airbag module, Occupant classification sensor, Passenger airbag deactivation indicator
87	—	Not used

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Components
88	—	Not used
89	—	Not used

Power Distribution Box

The power distribution box is located in the underhood compartment. The power distribution box contains high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

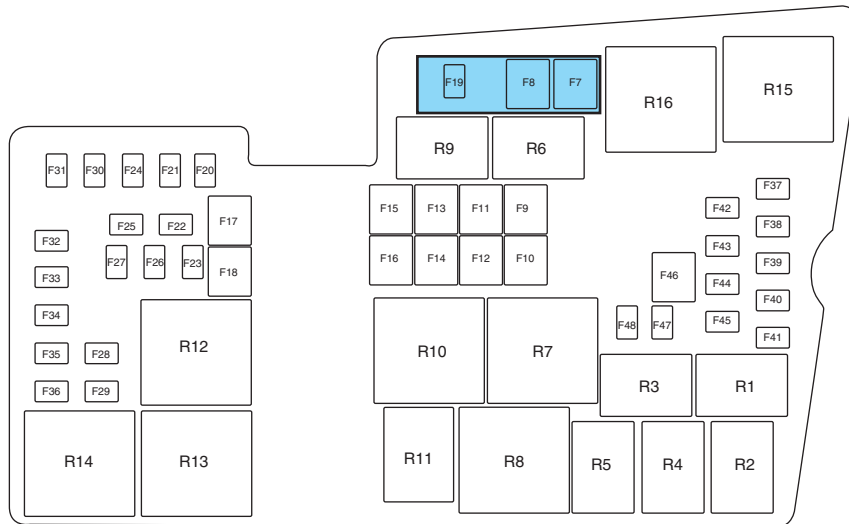


WARNING: Always remove the high voltage battery safety connectors to make sure the high voltage batteries are disconnected, and always disconnect the 12 volt (underhood) battery before servicing high current fuses.



WARNING: To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, refer to the *Battery* section of the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.



The high-current fuses are coded as follows:

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
F1	—	Not used
F2	—	Not used
F3	—	Not used
F4	—	Not used
F5	—	Not used
F6	—	Not used
F7	40A**	Anti-lock brakes pump
F8	30A**	Anti-lock brakes valve
F9	—	Not used
F10	40A**	Heater blower motor, Temperature sensor
F11	40A**	Vacuum pump

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
F12	40A**	Motor control relay fuse
F13	40A**	On-board charger
F14	40A**	Heater element 1
F15	—	Not used
F16	40A**	Heater element 2
F17	—	Not used
F18	20A**	Front wiper motor
F19	5A*	Anti-lock brake control module
F20	15A*	Horn
F21	5A*	Stop light switch
F22	15A*	Battery monitoring sensor
F23	5A*	Relay coils
F24	5A*	Light switch module
F25	—	Not used
F26	10A*	Powertrain Control Module (PCM)
F27	15A*	Charger port light ring
F28	5A*	Vacuum pump monitor
F29	—	Not used
F30	5A*	Transmission control module
F31	10A*	Smart datalink connector; Diagnostic connector
F32	10A*	Compressor bypass valves, Coolant valves, Electronic fan control module relay
F33	10A*	PCM (PSR feedback), A/C compressor solenoid
F34	15A*	PCM (contactor sense), Battery electronics control module (PSR)
F35	—	Not used
F36	20A*	Coolant water pumps
F37	5A*	Vehicle audible speaker for pedestrians

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
F38	15A*	PCM (electronic control module KL15)
F39	5A*	Not used (spare)
F40	5A*	Electronic power assist steering
F41	20A*	Body Control Module (BCM)
F42	15A*	Rear wiper
F43	15A*	Not used (spare)
F44	—	Not used
F45	—	Not used
F46	—	Not used
F47	5A*	In-Car temperature sensor
F48	5A*	Mechanical relay
R1	—	Not used
R2	Micro relay	Horn relay
R3	—	Not used
R4	Micro relay	Contactory relay
R5	—	Not used
R6	—	Not used
R7	Power relay	Heater element 3
R8	Power relay	Heater element 1 & 2
R9	—	Not used
R10	Mini relay	ABS vacuum pump (solid state relay)
R11	—	Not used
R12	Power relay	Electronic Fan Control Module (EFCM) relay
R13	Mini relay	Heater blower relay
R14	Mini relay	Motor control relay
R15	Power relay	Mechanical relay
R16	Power relay	Ignition 15
*Mini Fuses **Cartridge Fuses		

CHANGING THE TIRES

If you get a flat tire while driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed. Hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Note: The tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) indicator light will illuminate when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full functionality of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.

Have a flat serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the TPMS sensors, refer to *Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the TPMS sensor for damage.



WARNING: The use of tire sealants may damage your tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) and should not be used. However, if you must use a sealant, the TPMS sensor and valve stem on the wheel must be replaced by an authorized Ford dealer.



WARNING: Refer to *Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for important information. If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged, it will no longer function.

Dissimilar Spare Tire and Wheel Assembly Information



WARNING: Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

If you have a dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road tire and wheel assembly that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that were originally provided by Ford. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, it should be replaced rather than repaired.

A dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly is defined as a spare tire or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels and can be one of three types:

1. **T-type mini-spares:** This spare tire begins with the letter “T” for tire size and may have “Temporary Use Only” molded in the sidewall

2. **Full-size dissimilar spare with label on wheel:** This spare tire has a label on the wheel that states: "THIS TIRE AND WHEEL FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY"

When driving with one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above, **do not:**

- Exceed 50 mph (80 km/h)
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label
- Tow a trailer
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time
- Use commercial car washing equipment
- Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance
- Comfort and noise
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs
- Winter weather driving capability
- Wet weather driving capability
- All-wheel driving capability (if applicable)

3. **Full-size dissimilar spare without label on wheel**

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly, do not:

- Exceed 70 mph (113 km/h)
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire and wheel at a time
- Use commercial car washing equipment
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire and wheel

The usage of a full-size dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance
- Comfort and noise

- Ground clearance and parking at curbs
- Winter weather driving capability
- Wet weather driving capability
- All-wheel driving capability (if applicable)
- Load leveling adjustment (if applicable)

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly, additional caution should be given to:

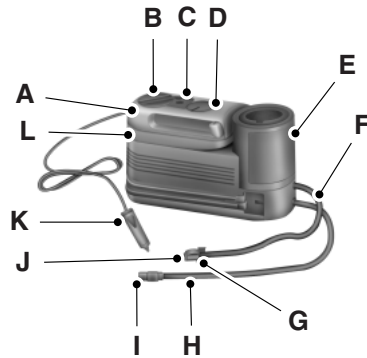
- Towing a trailer
- Driving vehicles equipped with a camper body
- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack

Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare tire and wheel, and seek service as soon as possible.

TEMPORARY MOBILITY KIT

Note: The temporary mobility kit sealant compound in the canister is to be used for one tire only. See your Ford authorized dealer for additional replacement sealant canisters.

The temporary mobility kit is located in the floor of the cargo area. The temporary mobility kit consists of an air compressor to reinflate the tire and a sealing compound in a canister that will seal most punctures caused by nails or similar objects. This kit will provide a temporary seal allowing you to drive your vehicle up to 120 miles (200 km) at a maximum speed of 50 mph (80 km/h).



- A. Air compressor (inside)
- B. Diverter knob
- C. On/Off button
- D. Air pressure gauge
- E. Sealant bottle/canister
- F. Sealant filling clear tube
- G. Sealant tube – tire valve connector
- H. Yellow cap tool
- I. Air compressor hose
- J. Air hose – tire valve connector
- K. Accessory power plug
- L. Casing/housing

General Information



WARNING: Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

Note: Do not use the temporary mobility kit if a tire has become severely damaged by driving the vehicle with a tire that has insufficient air pressure. Only punctured areas located within the tire tread can be sealed with the temporary mobility kit.

Do not attempt to repair punctures larger than ¼ inch (6.4 mm) or damage to the tire's sidewall. The tire may not completely seal.

Loss of air pressure may adversely affect tire performance. For this reason:

- **Note:** Do not drive the vehicle above 50 mph (80 km/h).
- **Note:** Do not drive further than 120 miles (200 km). Drive only to the closest Ford Motor Company authorized dealer or tire repair shop to have your tire inspected.
- Drive carefully and avoid abrupt steering maneuvers.

- Periodically monitor tire inflation pressure in the affected tire; if the tire is losing pressure, have the vehicle towed.
- Read the information in the *Tips for use of the temporary mobility kit* section to ensure safe operation of the temporary mobility kit and your vehicle.

Tips for use of the Temporary Mobility Kit

Read the following list of tips to ensure safe operation of the temporary mobility kit:

- Before operating the temporary mobility kit, make sure your vehicle is safely off the road and away from moving traffic. Turn on the hazard lights.
- Always set the parking brake to ensure the vehicle doesn't move unexpectedly.
- Do not remove any foreign objects, such as nails or screws, from the tire.
- When using the temporary mobility kit, leave the motor running so the compressor doesn't drain the vehicle's battery.
- Do not allow the compressor to operate continuously for more than 15 minutes; this will help prevent the compressor from overheating.
- Never leave the temporary mobility kit unattended when it is operating.
- Sealant compound contains latex. Make sure that you use the non-latex gloves provided to avoid an allergic reaction.
- Keep the temporary mobility kit away from children.
- Only use the temporary mobility kit when the ambient temperature is between -22°F (-30°C) and 158°F (70°C).
- Only use the sealing compound before the use by date. The use by date is on the lower right hand corner of the label located on the sealant canister (bottle). **Note:** Check the use by date regularly and replace the canister after four years.
- Do not store the temporary mobility kit unsecured inside the passenger compartment of the vehicle as it may cause injury during a sudden stop or collision. Always store the kit in its original location.
- After sealant use, the TPMS sensor and valve stem on the wheel must be replaced by an authorized Ford dealer.
- When inflating a tire or other objects, use the black air hose only. Do not use the transparent hose which is designed for sealant application only.

- Operating the temporary mobility kit could cause an electrical disturbance in radio, CD, and DVD player operation (if equipped).

What To Do When a Tire Is Punctured

A tire puncture within the tire's tread area can be repaired in two stages with the temporary mobility kit:

- In the first stage, the tire will be reinflated with a sealing compound and air. After the tire has been reinflated, you will need to drive the vehicle a short distance (approximately 4 miles [6 km]) to distribute the sealant in the tire.
- In the second stage, you will need to check the tire pressure and adjust, if necessary, to the vehicle's tire inflation pressure.

First Stage: Reinflating the Tire with Sealing Compound and Air



WARNING: Do not stand directly over the temporary mobility kit while inflating the tire. If you notice any unusual bulges or deformations in the tire's sidewall during inflation, stop and call roadside assistance.



WARNING: If the tire doesn't inflate to the recommended tire pressure within 15 minutes, stop and call roadside assistance.

Preparation

Park the vehicle in a safe, level and secure area, away from moving traffic. Turn the hazard lights on. Apply the parking brake and turn the motor off. Inspect the flat tire for visible damage.

Sealant compound contains latex. To avoid any allergic reactions, use the non-latex gloves located in the accessory box on the underside of the temporary mobility kit housing.

Do not remove any foreign object that has pierced the tire. If a puncture is located in the tire sidewall, stop and call roadside assistance.

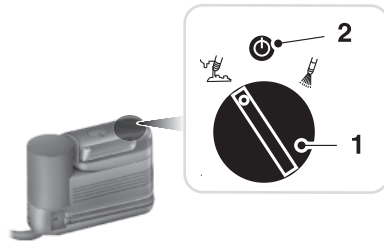
1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.
2. Unwrap the clear tube from the compressor housing.
3. Remove the tube cap and fasten the metal connector of the tube to the tire valve, turning clockwise. Make sure the connection is tightly fastened.

4. Plug the power cable into the 12V power point in the vehicle.

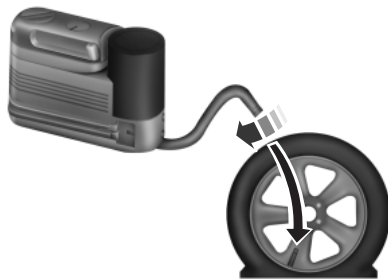


5. Remove the warning sticker found on the canister and place it on the top of the instrument panel or the center of the dash.

6. **Note:** Start the motor only if the vehicle is outdoors or in a well-ventilated area.



7. Turn dial (1) counterclockwise to the sealant position. Turn on the kit by pressing the on/off button (2).



8. Inflate the tire to the pressure listed on the tire label located on the driver's door or the door jamb area.

Note: When the sealing compound is first added into the tire, the air pressure gauge reading on the compressor unit may indicate a higher

value; this is normal and should be no reason for concern. The pressure will drop after about 30 seconds of operation. The tire pressure has to be checked with the compressor in the OFF position to get the correct tire pressure reading.

9. When the recommended tire pressure is reached, turn off the kit by pressing the on/off button; disconnect the kit from the tire valve and the power point. Re-install the valve cap on the tire valve, place the tube cap on the metal connector, and return the kit to the stowage area.

10. **Note:** Immediately and cautiously, drive the vehicle 4 miles (6 km) to distribute the sealant evenly inside the tire. Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).

Note: If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road to call for roadside assistance. **Note:** Do not proceed to the second stage of this operation.

11. After 4 miles (6 km), stop and check the tire pressure. See *Second stage: Checking tire pressure*.

Second Stage: Checking Tire Pressure



WARNING: If you are proceeding from the *First stage*:

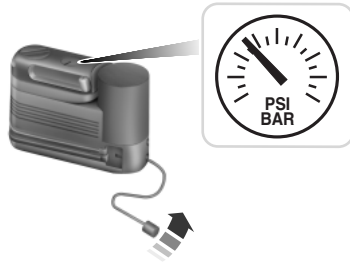
Reinflating the tire with sealing compound and air section and have injected sealant in the tire and the pressure is below 20 psi (1.4 bar), **stop and call roadside assistance**. If tire pressure is above 20 psi (1.4 bar), continue to the next step.



WARNING: The power plug may get hot after use and should be handled carefully while unplugging.

Check the air pressure of your tires as follows:

1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.
2. Unhook the black hose from the side of the compressor and fasten firmly on the valve stem by turning clockwise.
3. Press down and turn the dial clockwise to the air position. Turn on the kit by pressing the on/off button.



4. Adjust the tire to the recommended inflation pressure from the tire label located on the driver's door or door jamb area.

Note: The tire pressure has to be checked with the compressor in the OFF position to get the correct tire pressure reading.

5. Turn the compressor off by pressing the on/off button.

6. Unplug the hoses, re-install the valve cap on the tire and return the kit to the stowage area.

What To Do After the Tire Has Been Sealed

After using the temporary mobility kit to seal your tire, you will need to replace the sealant canister and clear tube (hose). Sealing compound and spare parts can be obtained and replaced at an authorized Ford Motor Company dealership or tire dealer. Empty sealant bottles may be disposed of at home; however, liquid residue from the sealing compound should be disposed by your local Ford Motor Company dealership or tire dealer, or in accordance with local waste disposal regulations.

Note: After the sealing compound has been used, the maximum vehicle speed is 50 mph (80 km/h) and the maximum driving distance is 120 miles (200 km). The sealed tire should be inspected immediately.

Note: After sealant use, the TPMS sensor and valve stem on the wheel must be replaced by an authorized Ford dealer.

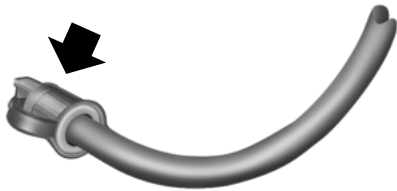
You can check the tire pressure any time within the 120 miles (200 km) by performing the procedure from *Second stage: Checking tire pressure* listed previously.

Removal of the sealant canister from the temporary mobility kit

1. Unwrap the clear tube from the compressor housing.



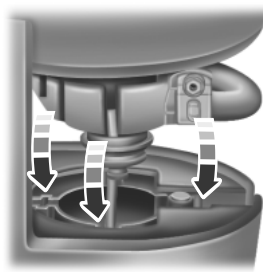
2. Locate the yellow cap at the end of the clear tube.



3. Using the yellow cap tool, press the tab located on the temporary mobility kit compressor housing while pulling up on the sealant canister.



Installation of the sealant canister to the temporary mobility kit



1. Align the sealant canister with the temporary mobility kit housing.



2. Once aligned, seat the sealant canister by lightly pushing down until you hear an audible click.



3. Wrap the clear tube around the compressor housing.

Note: If you experience any difficulties with the removal or installation of the sealant canister, consult your Ford Motor Company authorized dealer for assistance.

Use By / Utiliser avant:

Be sure to check the sealant compound's "use by" date regularly. The "use by" date is on the lower right hand corner of the label located on the sealant canister (bottle). The sealant canister should be replaced after four years.

Wheel Lug Nut Torque Specifications

WARNING: When a wheel is installed, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Ensure that any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub are secured so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while the vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of control.

Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque within 100 miles (160 km) after any wheel disturbance (tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal, etc.).

Bolt size	Wheel lug nut torque*	
	ft-lb	N•m
M12 x 1.5	100	135

* Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.



Note: Inspect the wheel pilot bore and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE (12 VOLT BATTERY ONLY)

WARNING: Batteries contain sulfuric acid which can burn skin, eyes and clothing, if contacted.

Note: This procedure is only for the low voltage, 12 volt underhood battery only. Do not attempt to jump start your high-voltage battery.

Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle. Automatic transmissions do not have push-start capability. Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.

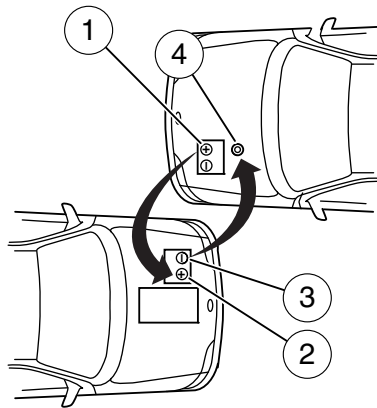
Preparing Your Vehicle

Note: Your vehicle has a 12 volt battery that is easily accessible under the hood. The 12 volt battery controls the switches and contacts that engage the high voltage battery. *The high-voltage battery cannot be jumped with a standard 12 volt battery.* If your high voltage battery does not accept a regular charge, your vehicle must be towed to your authorized dealership.

1. Use only a 12 volt supply to start your vehicle.
2. Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system.
3. Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle making sure the two vehicles *do not* touch. Set the parking brake on both vehicles. Stay clear of the motor cooling fan and other moving parts on both vehicles.
4. Check all battery terminals and remove any excessive corrosion before you attach the battery cables. Ensure that vent caps are tight and level.
5. Turn the heater fan on in both vehicles to protect from any electrical surges. Turn all other accessories off.

Connecting the Jumper Cables

Note: In the illustration, the vehicle on the bottom is used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.



1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the assisting battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the assisting battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine or motor.



WARNING: Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery or a surge of the battery.

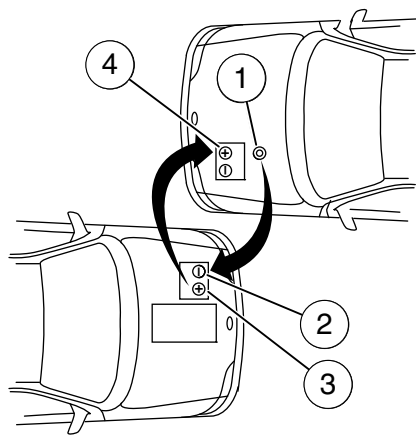
Jump Starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and run the engine at moderately increased speed.
2. Switch on the disabled vehicle to Ready to Drive mode.
3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, keep both vehicles running for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Removing the Jumper Cables

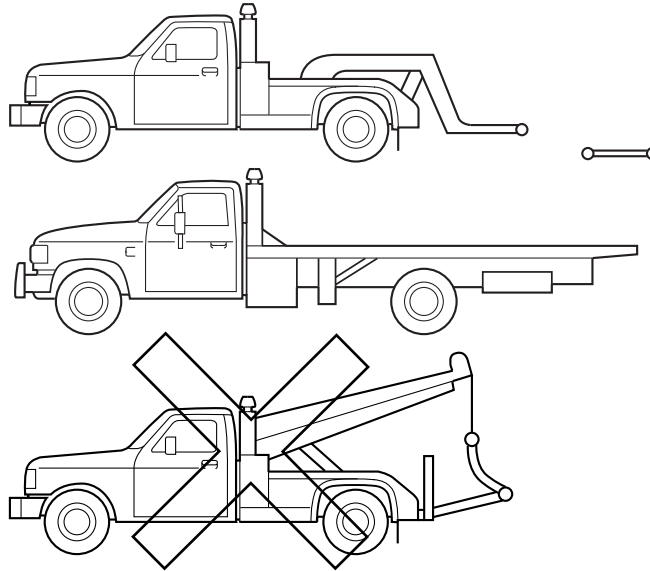
Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

Note: In the illustration, the vehicle on the bottom is used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.



1. Remove the jumper cable from the ground metal surface.
2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle's battery.

After the disabled vehicle has been started and the jumper cables removed, allow it to dwell in Ready to Drive mode for several minutes so the high-voltage battery can continue to recharge the 12-volt battery.

WRECKER TOWING 

If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

It is recommended that your vehicle be towed with a wheel lift or flatbed equipment. Do not tow with a slingbelt. Ford Motor Company has not approved a slingbelt towing procedure.

If your vehicle is to be towed from the rear using wheel lift equipment, the front wheels (drive wheels) must be placed on a dolly to prevent damage to the transmission.

If the vehicle is towed by other means or incorrectly, vehicle damage may occur.

Ford Motor Company produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures for your vehicle.

Emergency Towing

In case of a roadside emergency with a disabled vehicle (without access to wheel dollies, car hauling trailer, or flatbed transport vehicle) your vehicle (regardless of transmission powertrain configuration) can be flat towed (all wheels on the ground) under the following conditions:

- Vehicle is facing forward so that it is being towed in a forward direction.
- Place the transmission in N (Neutral). Refer to *Brake-shift interlock* in the *Driving* chapter for specific instructions if you cannot move the gear shift lever into N (Neutral).
- Maximum speed is not to exceed 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 miles (80 km).

IMPORTANT ELECTRIC VEHICLE AND HYBRID-ELECTRIC VEHICLE CONSIDERATIONS**Guidance for Ford Motor Company Electric and Hybrid-Electric Vehicles Equipped With High-Voltage Batteries (Vehicle Owner/Operator/General Public)****In the event of damage or fire involving an electric vehicle (EV) or hybrid-electric vehicle (HEV):**

- Always assume the high-voltage battery and associated components are energized and fully charged.
- Exposed electrical components, wires, and high-voltage batteries present potential high-voltage shock hazards.
- Venting/off-gassing high-voltage battery vapors are potentially toxic and flammable.
- Physical damage to the vehicle or high-voltage battery may result in immediate or delayed release of toxic and/or flammable gases and fire.

Vehicle information and general safety practices:

- Know the make and model of your vehicle.
- Review the Owner's Manual and become familiar with your vehicle's safety information and recommended safety practices.
- Do not attempt to repair damaged electric and hybrid-electric vehicles yourself. Contact an authorized Ford Dealer or vehicle manufacturer representative for service.

Crashes

A crash or impact significant enough to require an emergency response for conventional vehicles would also require the same response for an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle.

If possible

- Move your car to a safe, nearby location and remain on the scene.
- Roll down windows before shutting vehicle off.
- Place vehicle in Park, set parking brake, turn off the vehicle, activate hazard lights, and move key(s) at least 16 feet (5 meters) away from the vehicle.

Always

- Call 911 if assistance is needed and advise that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
- Do not touch exposed electrical components or the engine compartment, as a shock hazard may exist.
- Avoid contact with leaking fluids and gases, and remain out of the way of oncoming traffic until emergency responders arrive.
- When emergency responders arrive, tell them that the vehicle involved is an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle.

Fires

As with any vehicle, call 911 immediately if you see sparks, smoke, or flames coming from the vehicle.

- Exit the vehicle immediately.
- Advise 911 that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
- As with any vehicle fire, do not inhale smoke, vapors, or gas from the vehicle, as they may be hazardous.
- Remain a safe distance upwind and uphill from the vehicle fire.
- Stay out of the roadway and stay out of the way of any oncoming traffic while awaiting the arrival of emergency responders.

Post-Incident

- Do not store a severely damaged vehicle with a lithium-ion battery inside a structure or within 50 feet (15 meters) of any structure or vehicle.
- Ensure that passenger and cargo compartments remain ventilated (i.e., open window, door, or trunk).
- For vehicles in the United States, notify Ford Motor Company 1-800-392-3673 (then follow the prompts on the voice response menu), an authorized Ford dealer or service center as soon as possible as there may be other steps to secure and/or discharge the HV battery.
- For vehicles in Canada, notify Ford Motor Company 1-800-565-3673 (then follow the prompts on the voice response menu), an authorized Ford dealer or service center as soon as possible as there may be other steps to secure and/or discharge the HV battery.
- Call 911 if you observe leaking fluids, sparks, smoke, or flames, or hear gurgling or bubbling from the HV battery.

GETTING THE SERVICES YOU NEED

Warranty repairs to your vehicle must be performed by an authorized dealer. While any authorized dealer handling your vehicle line will provide warranty service, we recommend you return to your selling authorized dealer who wants to ensure your continued satisfaction.

Please note that certain warranty repairs require special training, equipment or both, so not all authorized dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. This means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, you may have to take your vehicle to another authorized dealer.

A reasonable time must be allowed to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to the authorized dealer. Repairs will be made using Ford or Motorcraft parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford.

Away from home

If you are away from home when your vehicle needs service, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center or use the online resources listed below to find the nearest authorized dealer.

In the United States:

Mailing address

Ford Motor Company
Customer Relationship Center
P.O. Box 6248
Dearborn, MI 48121

Telephone

1-800-392-3673 (FORD)
(TDD for the hearing impaired: 1-800-232-5952)

Online

Additional information and resources are available online at www.fordowner.com

These are some of the items that can be found online:

- U.S. dealer locator by Dealer Name, City/State, or Zip Code
- Owner Manuals
- Maintenance Schedules
- Recalls
- Ford Extended Service Plans
- Ford Genuine Accessories
- Service specials and promotions.

In Canada:

Mailing address

Customer Relationship Centre
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited
P.O. Box 2000
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4

Telephone

1-800-565-3673 (FORD)

Online

www.ford.ca

Additional assistance

If you have questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling/servicing authorized dealer.
2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.
3. If you require assistance or clarification on Ford Motor Company policies, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center

In order to help you serve you better, please have the following information available when contacting a Customer Relationship Center:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Your telephone number (home and business)
- The name of the authorized dealer and city where located
- The vehicle's current odometer reading

In some states, you must directly notify Ford in writing before pursuing remedies under your state's warranty laws. Ford is also allowed a final repair attempt in some states.

In the United States, a warranty dispute must be submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE before taking action under the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, or to the extent allowed by state law, before pursuing replacement or repurchase remedies provided by certain state laws. This dispute handling procedure is not required prior to enforcing state created rights or other rights which are independent of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or state replacement or repurchase laws.

IN CALIFORNIA (U.S. ONLY)

California Civil Code Section 1793.2(d) requires that, if a manufacturer or its representative is unable to repair a motor vehicle to conform to the vehicle's applicable express warranty after a reasonable number of attempts, the manufacturer shall be required to either replace the vehicle with one substantially identical or repurchase the vehicle and reimburse the buyer in an amount equal to the actual price paid or payable by the consumer (less a reasonable allowance for consumer use). The consumer has the right to choose whether to receive a refund or replacement vehicle.

California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) presumes that the manufacturer has had a reasonable number of attempts to conform the vehicle to its applicable express warranties if, within the first 18 months of ownership of a new vehicle or the first 18000 miles (29 000 km), whichever occurs first:

1. Two or more repair attempts are made on the same non-conformity likely to cause death or serious bodily injury OR
2. Four or more repair attempts are made on the same nonconformity (a defect or condition that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of the vehicle) OR
3. The vehicle is out of service for repair of nonconformities for a total of more than 30 calendar days (not necessarily all at one time)

In the case of 1 or 2 above, the consumer must also notify the manufacturer of the need for the repair of the nonconformity at the following address:

Ford Motor Company
16800 Executive Plaza Drive
Mail Drop 3NE-B
Dearborn, MI 48126

You are required to submit your warranty dispute to BBB AUTO LINE before asserting in court any rights or remedies conferred by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b). You are also required to use BBB AUTO LINE before exercising rights or seeking remedies created by the Federal Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. sec. 2301 et seq. If you choose to seek redress by pursuing rights and remedies not created by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) or the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, resort to BBB AUTO LINE is not required by those statutes.

THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM (U.S. ONLY)

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined earlier in this chapter in the *Getting the services you need* section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation or you do not want to participate in mediation, and if your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB. You are not bound by the decision, and may reject the decision and proceed to court where all findings of the BBB Auto Line dispute, and decision, are admissible in the court action. Should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford is then bound by the decision, and must comply with the decision within 30 days of receipt of your acceptance letter.

BBB AUTO LINE Application: Using the information provided below, please call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that will need to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB will review the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:

**BBB AUTO LINE
3033 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 600
Arlington, Virginia 22201**

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

Note: Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.

UTILIZING THE MEDIATION/ARBITRATION PROGRAM (CANADA ONLY)

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straight forward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding on both you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all Canadian territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685 or visit www.camvap.ca.

GETTING ASSISTANCE OUTSIDE THE U.S. AND CANADA

Before exporting your vehicle to a foreign country, contact the appropriate foreign embassy or consulate. These officials can inform you of local vehicle registration regulations and where to find unleaded fuel.

If you cannot find unleaded fuel or can only get fuel with an anti-knock index lower than is recommended for your vehicle, contact a regional office or owner relations/customer relationship office.

The use of leaded fuel in your vehicle without proper conversion may damage the effectiveness of your emission control system and may cause engine knocking or serious engine damage. Ford Motor Company/Ford of Canada is not responsible for any damage caused by use of improper fuel. Using leaded fuel may also result in difficulty importing your vehicle back into the U.S.

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Asia-Pacific Region, Sub-Saharan Africa, U.S. Virgin Islands, Central America, the Caribbean, and Israel, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY
FORD EXPORT OPERATIONS & GLOBAL INITIATIVES
1555 Fairlane Drive
Fairlane Business Park #3
Allen Park, Michigan 48101
U.S.A.

Telephone: (313) 594-4857

For customers in Guam, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands (CNMI), America Samoa, and the U.S. Virgin Islands, please feel free to call our Toll-Free Number: (800) 841-FORD (3673).

FAX: (313) 390-0804

Email: expcac@ford.com

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Puerto Rico, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

Ford International Business Development Inc.
Customer Relationship Center
P.O. Box 11957
Caparra Heights Station
San Juan, Puerto Rico 00922-1957
Telephone: (800) 841-FORD (3673)
FAX: (313) 390-0804
Email: prcac@ford.com
www.ford.com.pr

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in the Middle East, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

Ford Middle East
Customer Relationship Center
P.O. Box 21470
Dubai, United Arab Emirates
Telephone: +971 4 3326084
Toll-Free Number for the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia: 800 8971409
Local Telephone Number for Kuwait: 24810575
FAX: +971 4 3327299
Email: menacac@ford.com
www.me.ford.com

If you buy your vehicle in North America and then relocate to any of the above locations, register your vehicle identification number (VIN) and new address with Ford Motor Company Export Operations & Global Growth Initiatives by emailing expcac@ford.com.

If you are in another foreign country, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer employees cannot help you, they can direct you to the nearest Ford affiliate office.

Customers in the U.S. should call 1-800-392-3673.

ORDERING ADDITIONAL OWNER'S LITERATURE

To order the publications in this portfolio, contact Helm, Incorporated at:

HELM, INCORPORATED
47911 Halyard Drive
Plymouth, Michigan 48170
Attention: Customer Service

Or to order a free publication catalog, call toll free: 1-800-782-4356

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST

Helm, Incorporated can also be reached by their website:
www.helminc.com.

(Items in this catalog may be purchased by credit card, check or money order.)

Obtaining a French Owner's Manual

French Owner's Manual can be obtained from your authorized dealer or by contacting Helm, Incorporated using the contact information listed previously in this section.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (U.S. ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety

Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to:

Administrator
1200 New Jersey Avenue, Southeast
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada, using their toll-free number: 1-800-333-0510, or online at: <https://www.apps.tc.gc.ca/Saf-Sec-Sur/7/PCDB-BDPP/Index.aspx>.

WASHING THE EXTERIOR

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, such as Motorcraft® Detail Wash (ZC-3-A), which is available from your authorized dealer.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, such as dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash a vehicle that is “hot to the touch” or during exposure to strong, direct sunlight.
- Always use a clean sponge or car wash mitt with plenty of water for best results.
- Dry the vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel in order to eliminate water spotting.
- It is especially important to wash the vehicle regularly during the winter months, as dirt and road salt are difficult to remove and cause damage to the vehicle.
- Immediately remove items such as gasoline, diesel fuel, bird droppings and insect deposits because they can cause damage to the vehicle’s paint and trim over time. Use Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42) which is available from your authorized dealer.
- Remove any exterior accessories, such as antennas, before entering a car wash.
- **Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage any painted surface; if these substances come in contact with your vehicle, wash off as soon as possible.**

Exterior chrome

- Wash the vehicle first, using cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, such as Motorcraft® Detail Wash (ZC-3-A).
- Use Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner (ZC-15), available from your authorized dealer. Apply the product as you would a wax to clean bumpers and other chrome parts; allow the cleaner to dry for a few minutes, then wipe off the haze with a clean, dry rag.
- **Never use abrasive materials such as steel wool or plastic pads as they can scratch the chrome surface.**

WAXING

- Wash the vehicle first.
- Use a quality wax that does not contain abrasives.
- Do not allow paint sealant to come in contact with any non-body (low-gloss black) colored trim, such as grained door handles, roof racks, bumpers, side moldings, mirror housings or the windshield cowl area. The paint sealant will “gray” or stain the parts over time.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Your authorized dealer has touch-up paint to match your vehicle’s color. Take your color code (printed on a sticker in the driver’s door jamb) to your authorized dealer to ensure you get the correct color.

- Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.
- Always read the instructions before using the products.

ALUMINUM WHEELS AND WHEEL COVERS

Aluminum wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. In order to maintain their shine:

- Clean weekly with Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner, which is available from your authorized dealer. Heavy dirt and brake dust accumulation may require agitation with a sponge. Rinse thoroughly with a strong stream of water.
- Never apply any cleaning chemical to hot or warm wheel rims or covers.
- Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims or covers. Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over time.
- Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.
- To remove tar and grease, use Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover , available from your authorized dealer.

UNDER HOOD AND CHARGE PORT

WARNING: Exposure to high voltage may result in severe personal injury or death. High voltage components must be serviced by a trained service technician.

- Never use a power washer to clean under the hood or in the charge port. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause significant damage and risk of personal injury.
- Never spray water on any of the components under the hood or in the charge port. Water ingress can damage electrical components and connections.
- Use a dry cloth to remove any excess dirt that collects under the hood or in the charge port. Always power-down the vehicle and wait five minutes before touching any electrical components.

PLASTIC (NON-PAINTED) EXTERIOR PARTS

Use only approved products to clean plastic parts. These products are available from your authorized dealer.

- For routine cleaning, use Motorcraft® Detail Wash (ZC-3-A).
- If tar or grease spots are present, use Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42).

CLEANING THE WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

The windows and wiper blades should be cleaned regularly. If the wipers do not wipe properly, substances on the vehicle's glass or the wiper blades may be the cause. These may include hot wax treatments used by commercial car washes, water repellent coatings, tree sap, or other organic contamination; these contaminants may cause squeaking or chatter noise from the blades, and streaking and smearing of the windshield. To clean these items, follow these tips:

- The windows may be cleaned with a non-abrasive cleaner such as Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner.
- The wiper blades can be cleaned with isopropyl (rubbing) alcohol or Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate in the U.S., or Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid in Canada. Be sure to replace wiper blades when they appear worn or do not function properly.
- Do not use abrasives, as they may cause scratches.
- Do not use fuel, kerosene, or paint thinner to clean any parts.

If you cannot remove those streaks after cleaning with the glass cleaner or if the wipers chatter and move in a jerky motion, clean the outer surface of the windshield and the wiper blades using a sponge or soft cloth with a neutral detergent or mild-abrasive cleaning solution. After cleaning, rinse the windshield and wiper blades with clean water. The windshield is clean if beads do not form when you rinse the windshield with water.

Do not use sharp objects, such as a razor blade, to clean the inside of the rear window or to remove decals, as it may cause damage to the rear window defroster's heated grid lines.

INSTRUMENT PANEL/INTERIOR TRIM AND CLUSTER LENS

Clean the instrument panel, interior trim areas and cluster lens with a clean, damp, white cotton cloth, then use a clean and dry white cotton cloth to dry these areas.

- Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect the driver from undesirable windshield reflection.
- Be certain to wash or wipe your hands clean if you have been in contact with certain products such as insect repellent and suntan lotion in order to avoid possible damage to the interior painted surfaces.
- Do not use household or glass cleaners as these may damage the finish of the instrument panel, interior trim and cluster lens.
- Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill on interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, **wipe off immediately**. Damage may not be covered by your warranty.



WARNING: Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

If a staining liquid like coffee/juice has been spilled on the instrument panel or on interior trim surfaces, clean as follows:

1. Wipe up spilled liquid using a clean, white, cotton cloth.
2. Wipe the surface with a damp, clean, white cotton cloth. For more thorough cleaning, use a mild soap and water solution. If the spot cannot be completely cleaned by this method, the area may be cleaned using a commercially available cleaning product designed for automotive interiors.
3. If necessary, apply more soap and water solution or cleaning product to a clean, white, cotton cloth and press the cloth onto the soiled area—allow this to set at room temperature for 30 minutes.
4. Remove the soaked cloth, and if it is not soiled badly, use this cloth to clean the area by using a rubbing motion for 60 seconds.
5. Following this, wipe area dry with a clean, white, cotton cloth.

INTERIOR

For fabric, carpets, cloth seats, safety belts and seats equipped with side airbags:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Remove light stains and soil with Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (ZC-54).
- If grease or tar is present on the material, spot-clean the area first with Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover (ZC-14). In Canada, use Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Cleaner (CXC-101).
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately (but do not oversaturate) or the ring will set.
- Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.



WARNING: Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's safety belts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side-airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a collision.

LEATHER SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Clean spills and stains as quickly as possible.
- For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth. For more thorough cleaning, wipe the surface with a mild soap and water solution. In Canada, use Motorcraft® Vinyl Cleaner (CXC-93). Dry the area with a soft cloth.
- If the leather cannot be completely cleaned using a mild soap and water solution, the leather may be cleaned using a commercially available leather cleaning product designed for automotive interiors.
- To check for compatibility, first test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous part of the leather.

- Do not use household cleaning products, alcohol solutions, solvents or cleaners intended for rubber, vinyl and plastics, or oil/petroleum-based leather conditioners. These products may cause premature wearing or damage to the leather.

UNDERBODY

- Never pressure wash or spray the underbody with water.
- Clean only with a dry cloth after powering down and waiting for five minutes.
- Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

FORD AND LINCOLN CAR CARE PRODUCTS

Your Ford or Lincoln authorized dealer has many quality products available to clean your vehicle and protect its finishes. These quality products have been specifically engineered to fulfill your automotive needs; they are custom designed to complement the style and appearance of your vehicle. Each product is made from high quality materials that meet or exceed rigid specifications. For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42)

Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner (ZC-15)

Motorcraft® Detail Wash (ZC-3-A)

Motorcraft® Dusting Cloth (ZC-24)

Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-101)

Motorcraft® Premium Glass Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-100)

Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid (Canada only) [CXC-37-(A, B, D or F)]

Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate (U.S. only) (ZC-32-A)

Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (ZC-54)

Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover (U.S. only) (ZC-14)

Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23)

Motorcraft® Vinyl Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-93)

Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner (ZC-37-A)

324 Maintenance and Specifications

SERVICE RECOMMENDATIONS

To help you service your vehicle, we provide *scheduled maintenance information* which makes tracking routine service easy.

If your vehicle requires professional service, your authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your *Warranty Guide* to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. Motorcraft® parts are designed and built to provide the best performance in your vehicle.

PRECAUTIONS WHEN SERVICING YOUR VEHICLE

Be especially careful when inspecting or servicing your vehicle.

- Make sure that loose clothing, jewelry or long hair does not get caught in moving parts.
- Keep all open flames and other burning (cigarettes) material away from the battery and all related parts.

HIGH VOLTAGE INFORMATION

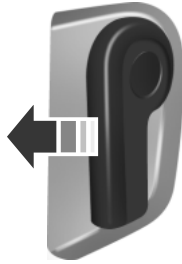


WARNING: Exposure to high voltage may result in severe personal injury or death. High voltage components must be serviced by a trained service technician.

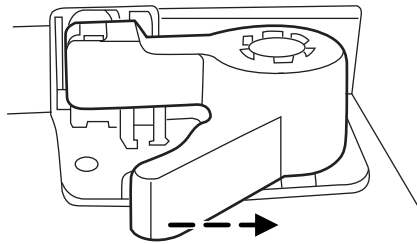
Your vehicle consists of various high voltage components and wiring. All of the high voltage power flows through specific wiring assemblies which are labeled as such and/or are covered with a solid orange convolute or orange stripe tape. Do not come in contact with these components.

Working with the High Voltage system off

1. Set the parking brake and ensure the gearshift is securely latched in P (Park).
2. Turn off and remove the key.
3. Block the wheels to prevent the vehicle from moving unexpectedly.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the instrument panel.



2. Go to the front of the vehicle and locate the auxiliary latch located under the front of the hood (left of center) and then release it by pushing the auxiliary latch to the right.

3. Lift the hood and locate the prop rod on the passenger side of the vehicle. Support the hood with the prop rod.

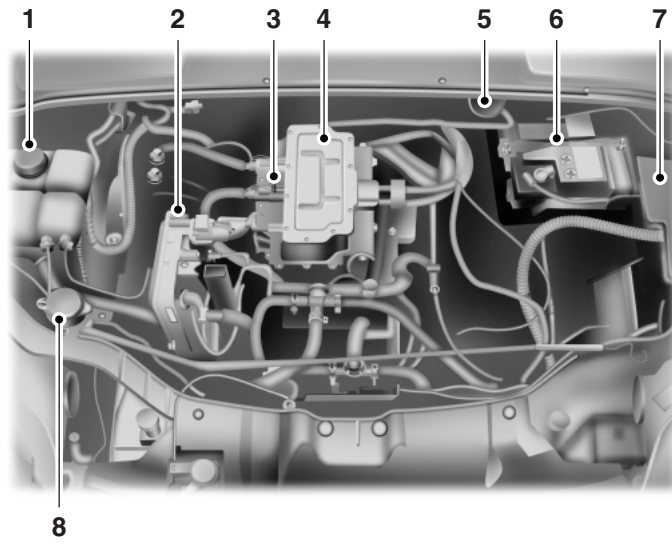
IDENTIFYING COMPONENTS UNDER THE HOOD

WARNING: The inverter system controller contains various high-voltage components that can cause serious bodily harm or death. The inverter system controller not serviceable and should never be touched, probed or tampered with.

Note: The under hood compartment contains many high-voltage components and wiring. Do not attempt to service any of these components.

The high-voltage components are color coated orange for easy identification.

Note: The illustration shows the under hood compartment without the cover in order to show the components.



1. Coolant reservoir
2. DC/DC Converter
3. High voltage traction motor
4. Inverter system controller
5. Brake fluid reservoir
6. 12 volt battery
7. Power distribution box
8. Windshield washer fluid

WINDSHIELD WASHER FLUID

Add fluid to fill the reservoir if the level is low. In very cold weather, do not fill the reservoir completely.

Only use a washer fluid that meets Ford specifications. Do not use any special washer fluid such as windshield water repellent type fluid or bug wash. They may cause

squeaking, chatter noise, streaking and smearing. Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.

State or local regulations on volatile organic compounds may restrict the use of methanol, a common windshield washer antifreeze additive.

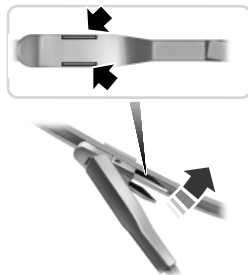
Washer fluids containing non-methanol antifreeze agents should be used only if they provide cold weather protection without damaging the vehicle's paint finish, wiper blades or washer system.



WARNING: If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 40°F (5°C), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

The wiper arms can be manually moved when the ignition is off. This allows for ease of blade replacement and cleaning under the blades.



1. Turn the ignition off before removing the wiper blade.
2. Pull the wiper blade and arm away from the glass.
3. Squeeze the locking tabs to release the blade from the arm and pull the blade away from the arm to remove it.

328 Maintenance and Specifications

4. Attach the new blade to the arm and snap it into place. Lower the wiper arm and blade back to the windshield. The wiper arms will automatically return to their normal position when the ignition is turned on.

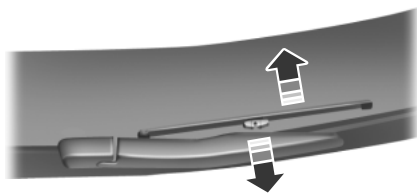
Replace wiper blades at least once per year for optimum performance.

Poor wiper quality can be improved by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield. Refer to the *Vehicle Care* chapter.

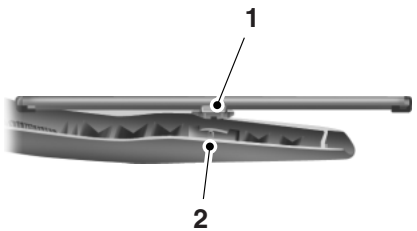
To prolong the life of the wiper blades, it is highly recommended to scrape off the ice on the windshield before turning on the wipers. The layer of ice has many sharp edges and can damage the micro edge of the wiper rubber element.

Changing the Rear Window Wiper Blade (If Equipped)

To replace the rear wiper blade:



1. Press the wiper blade against the glass with one hand and hold it.
2. Pull the wiper arm away from the wiper blade to separate.




3. To attach the new wiper to the wiper arm, align the slot (1) and cross pin (2) and firmly press the wiper arm into the wiper blade until a click is heard.


If you find this procedure too difficult, please see your dealer.


LOW-VOLTAGE BATTERY

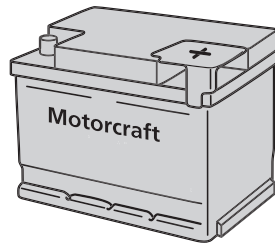


WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide proper ventilation.

 **WARNING:** When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and/or damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

 **WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

 **WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.



Your vehicle is equipped with a Motorcraft® maintenance-free battery which normally does not require additional water during its life of service.

Note: If your battery has a cover/shield, make sure it is reinstalled after the battery has been cleaned or replaced.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry. Also, make certain the battery cables are always tightly fastened to the battery terminals.

If you see any corrosion on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

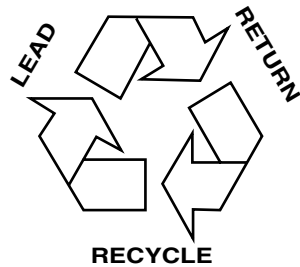
It is recommended that the negative battery cable terminal be disconnected from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period of time. This will minimize the discharge of your battery during storage.

To ensure proper operation of the battery management system (BMS), any electrical devices that are added to the vehicle should not have their ground connection made directly at the negative battery post. A connection at the negative battery post can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: Electrical or electronic accessories or components added to the vehicle by the dealer or the owner may adversely affect battery performance and durability and may also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.

When a battery replacement is required, the battery should only be replaced with a Ford recommended replacement battery that matches the electrical requirements of the vehicle.

Note: The clock and the preset radio stations must be reset once the battery is reconnected.



- Always dispose of automotive batteries in a responsible manner. Follow your local authorized standards for disposal. Call your local authorized recycling center to find out more about recycling automotive batteries.

HIGH-VOLTAGE BATTERY



WARNING: This battery pack should only be serviced by an authorized electric vehicle technician. Improper handling can result in personal injury or death.

Your vehicle consists of various high-voltage components and wiring. All of the high-voltage power flows through specific wiring assemblies which are labeled as such and/or are covered with a solid orange convolute or orange striped tape. Do not come in contact with these components.

No regular maintenance, other than regular charging is required.

The high-voltage battery system is a high-voltage, lightweight lithium-ion battery system comprised of two individual packs. One pack is located in the rear cargo area behind the second row seats, and the other is located

underneath the vehicle. The high-voltage battery system uses an advanced, active liquid heating and cooling system to regulate high-voltage battery temperature and help maximize high-voltage battery life.

Note: The lithium-ion, high-voltage battery will experience gradual capacity loss with time and use, which is considered normal wear and tear.

CHARGING THE HIGH-VOLTAGE BATTERY



WARNING: Do not use the 120 volt convenience cord with an extension cord or adapter.



WARNING: In Canada, do not use the 120 volt convenience cord in commercial garages.



WARNING: This equipment has arcing or sparking parts that should not be exposed to flammable vapors. This equipment should be located at least 18 inches (80 mm) above the floor.

Charging Equipment

Note: Your vehicle comes equipped with a standard 120 volt convenience cord located in your trunk storage compartment underneath the carpeted panel. This allows you to charge the battery in your own garage using a standard 120 volt household outlet. Using the standard 120 volt convenience cord takes up to 18–20 hours to completely charge from an empty battery.



Ford recommends upgrading to the optional 240 volt charging station for faster more efficient charging. Use of a 240 volt charging station will take approximately 3–4 hours to fully charge a empty battery.

Note: Your electrical source must meet certain requirements for the high-voltage battery to charge. The AC outlet must be a three-prong 110-120 volt AC outlet that is properly grounded, 15–20 amps (or greater), and in good condition. The line also must be dedicated, which means that no other appliances should be connected to the same circuit. If a dedicated circuit is not used, the circuit breaker could trip or open. If a dedicated circuit is not available, contact a licensed professional electrician for proper installation.

Note: The vehicle must be in (P) park to charge the high-voltage battery.



Make sure that the 120 volt convenience cord is completely unwound before charging. Always plug the cord into the AC outlet before connecting the charging coupler into the vehicle's charge port receptacle. The 120 volt convenience cord inline control box has three indicator lights that represent the charging status; power, charge and fault.

The charge port is located between the front left side door and front left wheel well. There is an indentation located on the charge port door that allows you to press to open and press to close the door.

Power (green light) — this indicator lights up when the cord is plugged into the AC wall outlet.

Charge (green light) — Indicates status of charging:

- No light means the cord is not connected to the vehicle.
- Blinking light means that the charging is in process.
- Solid light means that the vehicle is connected but not charging.

Fault (red triangle light) — Lights up in case of a detected failure. No charging is possible:

- Blinking red triangle light – means that the 120 volt convenience cord is trying to reset the failure and could restart the charging cycle.
- Solid red triangle light – means that the fault is permanent. The cord needs to be unplugged and re-plugged to reset the fault. If the fault persists, contact your authorized dealer.

Charge Port and Light Ring

Note: Do not force the charge port door open or closed. Forcing the door open or closed will damage the charge port.

The light ring located around the charge port indicates the charge status of your battery while connected to a charge station or convenience cord. The charge port light ring is divided into four quadrants that inform you of the charge status.

There is a cord acknowledgement feature that will be activated when a charge cycle is initiated. The four light quadrants will each individually flash clockwise starting with the top right light and ending with the top left, two full times confirming a charging coupler has been detected.

You can use your keyfob to view the vehicles charge status at any time by pressing the unlock button. The light ring will light up the corresponding quadrant(s) so that the current state of the vehicles charge can be determined. If the charge is below 25 percent the light ring will not illuminate. Don't forget to press the lock button on your keyfob to re-lock the vehicle.

Different sequences of the light ring will represent the status of the charge.

**Charging**

Note: The vehicle must be in (P) Park to charge.

To charge your high-voltage battery:

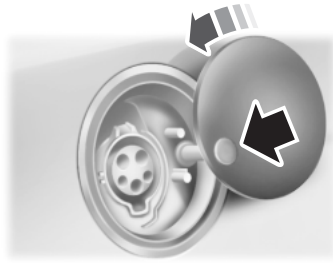
1. Put the vehicle in (P) park and power down the vehicle.
2. Press the indentation located on the charge port door and the door will rotate open.
3. Plug the charging coupler into the vehicles charge port receptacle and make sure the button “clicks” confirming that it is completely engaged.
4. Verify that the cord acknowledgement feature activates. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.
5. If using a 240 volt charging station, follow the instructions on the charge station to begin the charging process.

When charging, the light ring will display how far along the charge is:

- When the top right quadrant is pulsing the charge is between 0–25 percent.
- When the top right quadrant is solidly lit and the bottom right quadrant is pulsing the charge is between 25–50 percent.
- When both right side quadrants are solidly lit and the bottom left quadrant is pulsing the charge is between 50–75 percent.
- When three quadrants are solidly lit and the top left quadrant is pulsing the charge is between 75–100 percent.
- When the entire ring is solidly lit, the charge is complete.

Note: The illuminated ring will shut off one minute after reaching a full charge.

Note: If a vehicle charging system fault is detected at any point in a charge cycle the entire light ring will flash continuously for one minute and then shut off. If this happens unplug, and then re-plug the charging coupler into the charge port receptacle. If the problem persists contact your authorized dealer.



Note: Do not pull the wall plug from the wall while the vehicle is charging. Doing so may damage the outlet and the cord.

To disconnect the charging coupler:

1. Press the button on the charging coupler.
2. While holding the button, remove the charging coupler from the vehicle's charge port receptacle.
3. Close the charge port door by pressing the indentation on the charge port door. Continue pressing the indentation while the door rotates counter clockwise and closes.

Convenience Charging and MyFord® Mobile

The setting up of the charging convenience features is primarily done with the MyFord Mobile smart phone application. Visit myfordmobile.com for more complete information and to set up your MyFord Mobile account.

Your electric vehicle also has some convenience features to improve your charging experience:

- **Value Charge:** The vehicle schedules charging at the lowest available utility rates. Contact your utility company to see what rates are available.
- **Charge Now:** Fully charge your vehicle at the quickest rate. The vehicle starts charging immediately after you connect the charging coupler into the vehicle.
- **My GO Time:** Setting My GO times through the MyFord Mobile application allows you to set charging schedules and cabin preconditioning settings so your vehicle is ready to drive when you are. By setting a My GO time the vehicles charge can be completed before your next set drive time. A calendar view allows you to program two My GO Times per day for each of the seven days of the week. Remember, your vehicle must be plugged in for My GO time to work.
- **Cabin Preconditioning:** Get the most miles out of every charge by preconditioning your vehicle while it's still plugged in and charging. Use your smart phone to set the cabin temperature and departure time before you leave so you use energy from your home wall outlet instead of your battery to heat or cool your vehicle.

HIGH-VOLTAGE SERVICE DISCONNECT

The high-voltage service disconnect shuts off power from the high-voltage battery.

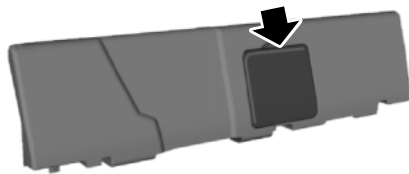
Disabling the High-Voltage Battery

Note: There are two disconnect circuits in your vehicle. Disconnecting one circuit will automatically disable the high-voltage battery.

To disable the high-voltage battery and stop all high-voltage electric activity in the vehicle you can access one or both of the two high-voltage disconnect circuits. To do this, you must unplug one of the circuits from the circuit ports connected to the battery.

The lower battery high-voltage disconnect circuit is located by the right rear wheel, accessible from under the car.

The upper battery high-voltage disconnect circuit is located behind the rear fold-down seats near the left side of the vehicle, and is more easily accessible than the lower battery circuit. To access this circuit:



1. Fold down the left rear seat.
2. Locate the access door. Press the button on the top of the access door to remove the plastic cover.
3. A cut out area will be visible which allows your hand access to the circuit.

4. Press the tab on the top center of the circuit and rotate the handle toward you. Press again to pull the hand down.
5. Pull the handle toward you and remove the circuit from the vehicle to disable the high-voltage battery.

Reactivating the High-Voltage Battery

Note: If you have manually disconnected your high-voltage shutoff circuits you will need to reconnect the circuits before they can be reactivated. The vehicle will detect if the electrical system is safe and reactivate automatically.

COOLANT

Checking the coolant

When the Electric Powertrain Assembly (EPA) is cold, check the level of the coolant in the reservoir at the intervals listed in the *scheduled maintenance information*.

Note: Make sure that the level is between the MIN and MAX marks on the coolant reservoir.

Note: Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the MAX mark.

Note: If the coolant has not been checked at the recommended interval, the coolant reservoir may become low or empty. If the level is at the MIN mark, below the MIN mark, or empty, add prediluted coolant to the reservoir. Refer to *Adding coolant* in this chapter.

Note: For best results, coolant concentration should be tested with a refractometer such as Rotunda tool 300-ROB75240E available from your dealer. Ford does not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentrations.

Note: It is very important to use prediluted coolant meeting the Ford specification in order to avoid plugging the small coolant passageways. Use of concentrated coolant and water may cause coolant passageway plugging and void the warranty. See the technical specifications chart in the *Capacities and Specifications* chapter.

Note: Automotive fluids are not interchangeable; do not use coolant/antifreeze or windshield washer fluid outside of its specified function and vehicle location.

Adding coolant



WARNING: Do not add coolant when the Electric Powertrain Assembly (EPA) is hot. Steam and scalding liquids released from a hot cooling system can burn you badly. Also, you can be burned if you spill coolant on hot motor parts.



WARNING: Do not put coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



WARNING: In an emergency, add water to the cooling system to reach an authorized dealer. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the Electric Powertrain Assembly (EPA) is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure; steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when the cap is loosened slightly.



WARNING: Do not add coolant further than the MAX mark.

Note: Coolant replacement can only be completed by an authorized dealer. If not performed properly, damage could occur to the cooling system components and may void the warranty.

Note: Do not use stop leak pellets or cooling system sealants/additives as they can cause damage to the cooling and/or heating systems. This damage would not be covered under your vehicle's warranty.

Note: During normal vehicle operation, the coolant may change color from orange to pink or light red. As long as the coolant is clear and uncontaminated, this color change does not indicate the coolant has degraded nor does it require the coolant to be drained, the system to be flushed, or the coolant to be replaced.

- DO NOT MIX different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Make sure the correct coolant is used. Mixing of coolants may harm your cooling system. The use of an improper coolant may harm the Electric Powertrain Assembly (EPA) and cooling system components and may void the warranty.
- A large amount of water without coolant may be added, in case of emergency, to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, the cooling system must be drained, chemically cleaned with Motorcraft® Premium Cooling System Flush, and refilled with prediluted coolant as soon as possible. Water alone (without coolant) can cause damage from corrosion, overheating, freezing or plugging.
- Do not use alcohol, methanol, brine or any coolants mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze (coolant). Alcohol and other liquids can cause damage from overheating or freezing.
- Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure will escape as you unscrew the cap.

Add prediluted coolant meeting the Ford specification. See the technical specifications chart in the *Capacities and Specifications* chapter for more information.

Whenever coolant has been added, the coolant level in the coolant reservoir should be checked the next few times you drive the vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted coolant to bring the coolant level to the proper level.

Recycled coolant

Ford Motor Company does NOT recommend the use of recycled coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.



Used coolant should be disposed of in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

Severe climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates:

Note: It may be necessary to have an authorized Ford dealer increase the coolant concentration above 50%.

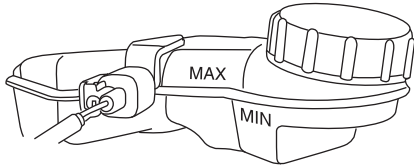
Note: A coolant concentration of 60% will provide improved freeze point protection. Increased coolant concentrations above 60% will decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause damage.

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

Note: It may be necessary to have an authorized Ford dealer decrease the coolant concentration to 40%.

Note: A coolant concentration of 40% will provide improved overheat protection. Decreased coolant concentrations below 40% will decrease the corrosion/freeze protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause damage.

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use prediluted coolant meeting the Ford specification for optimum cooling system protection.

BRAKE FLUID CHECK

The fluid level will drop slowly as the brakes wear, and will rise when the brake components are replaced. Fluid levels between the MIN and MAX lines are within the normal operating range; there is no need to add fluid. If the fluid levels are outside of the normal operating range, the performance of the system could be compromised; seek service from your authorized dealer immediately.

Note: Keep brake fluid clean. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage and possible failure.

Checking single-speed transmission

The transmission does not have an underhood transmission fluid dipstick.

Your transmission does not consume fluid. It is designed to be filled for life. However, the fluid level should be checked if the transmission is not working properly, or if you notice some sign of fluid leakage.

Note: Transmission fluid should be checked and, if required, fluid should be added by an authorized dealer.

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

VEHICLE STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for an extended period of time (30 days or more), refer to the following maintenance recommendations to ensure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

All motor vehicles and their components were engineered and tested for reliable, regular driving. Long term storage under various conditions may lead to component degradation or failure unless specific precautions are taken to preserve the components.

General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- Protect from sunlight, if possible.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and damage.

Body

- Wash vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housing and underside of front fenders. See the *Cleaning* chapter for more information.
- Periodically wash vehicles stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up raw or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Rewax as necessary when the vehicle is washed. See the *Cleaning* chapter for more information.
- Lubricate all hood, door and trunk lid hinges, and latches with a light grade oil. See the *Cleaning* chapter for more information.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

Cooling system

- Protect against freezing temperatures.
- When removing vehicle from storage, check coolant fluid level. Confirm there are no cooling system leaks, and fluid is at the recommended level.

Brakes

- Make sure brakes and parking brake are fully released.

Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

Miscellaneous

- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 25 feet (8 m) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.

342 Maintenance and Specifications

LOW AND HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY STORAGE

If your vehicle is to be stored for 30 days or longer, the high voltage battery should be charged to above 25% state of charge and the low voltage (under hood) battery negative terminal should be disconnected.

If your vehicle is to be stored for 3 months or longer, the high voltage battery should be charged to between 80% and 100% state of charge and the low voltage (under hood) battery negative terminal should be disconnected. Failure to do this could damage the batteries.

Note: If battery cables are disconnected, it will be necessary to reset memory features.

MOTORCRAFT PART NUMBERS

Component	Part number
12 Volt battery	BXT-96R-500/BXT-96R-590
Cabin air filter	FP70
Windshield wiper blade	WW-2201-PF (driver side) WW-1901-PF (passenger side)

MAINTENANCE PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS AND CAPACITIES

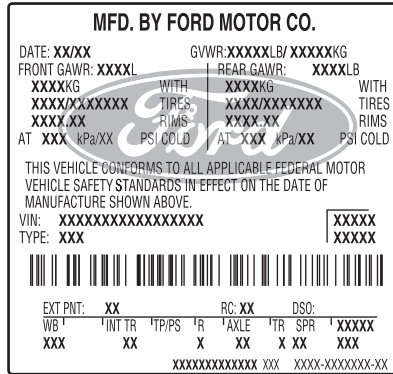
Item	Capacity	Ford Part Name or Equivalent	Ford Part Number / Ford Specification
Brake fluid	Between MIN and MAX on reservoir	Motorcraft® High Performance DOT 4 LV Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid	WSS-M6C65-A2 / ISO 4925 Class 6
Door latch, hood latch, auxiliary hood latch, trunk latch, seat tracks.	—	Multi-Purpose Grease (Lithium grease)	XG-4 or XL-5 or equivalent / ESB-M1C93-B
Lock cylinder	—	Motorcraft® Penetrating and Lock Lubricant	XL-1 / None
Electric Powertrain Assembly coolant ¹	15.8 quarts (15.0L)	Motorcraft® Orange Antifreeze/Coolant Prediluted	VC-3DIL-B (US) CVC-3DIL-B (Canada) / WSS-M97B44-D2
Transmission fluid ²	1.32 quarts (1.25L)	Motorcraft® MERCON® LV ATF	XT-10-QLV / MERCON® LV
Windshield washer fluid	Fill as required	Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate (US) Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid (Canada)	ZC-32-A (US) CXC-37-(A, B, D, and F) (Canada) / WSB-M8B16-A2/- -

¹Add the coolant type originally equipped in your vehicle.

²Using any transmission fluid other than those that meet the recommended specification may cause internal transmission damage. Do not use Motorcraft® Continuously Variable Chain Type Transmission Fluid (blue). This vehicle uses Motorcraft® MERCON® LV approved ATF.

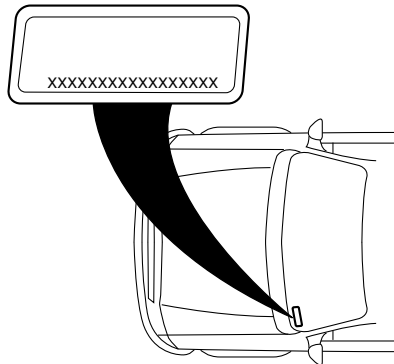
IDENTIFYING YOUR VEHICLE

Safety Compliance Certification Label



The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Regulations require that a Safety Compliance Certification Label be affixed to a vehicle and prescribe where the Safety Compliance Certification Label may be located. The Safety Compliance Certification Label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, the door latch post, or the edge of the door near the door latch, next to the driver's seating position.

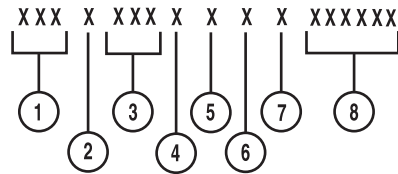
Vehicle identification number (VIN)



The vehicle identification number is located on the driver side instrument panel.

Please note that in the graphic, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) contains the following information:



- 1. World manufacturer identifier
- 2. Brake system / Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) / Restraint Devices and their location
- 3. Make, vehicle line, series, body type
- 4. Engine type

- 5. Check digit
- 6. Model year
- 7. Assembly plant
- 8. Production sequence number

ACCESSORIES

For a complete listing of the accessories that are available for your vehicle, please contact your dealer or visit our online store at:

Accessories.Ford.com (U.S. only).

Ford Custom Accessories are available for your vehicle through your local Ford or Ford of Canada dealer. Ford Motor Company will repair or replace any properly dealer-installed Ford Custom Accessories found to be defective in factory-supplied materials or workmanship during the warranty period, as well as any component damaged by the defective accessories. The accessories will be warranted for whichever provides you the greatest benefit:

- 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km) (whichever occurs first), or
- the remainder of your new vehicle limited warranty.

Contact your dealer for details and a copy of the warranty.

*Ford Licensed Accessories (FLA) are warranted by the accessory manufacturer's warranty. Ford Licensed Accessories are fully designed and developed by the accessory manufacturer and have not been designed or tested to Ford Motor Company engineering requirements. Contact your Ford dealer for details regarding the manufacturer's limited warranty and/or a copy of the FLA product limited warranty offered by the accessory manufacturer.

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification label). Consult your authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of mobile communications systems — such as two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms - that are equipped with radio transmitters. Any such equipment installed in your vehicle should comply with FCC or CRTC regulations and should be installed only by a qualified service technician.

- Mobile communications systems may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if they are not properly designed for automotive use.
- To avoid interference with other vehicle functions, such as anti-lock braking systems, amateur radio users who install radios and antennas onto their vehicle should not locate the amateur radio antennas in the area of the driver's side hood.
- Any non-Ford custom electrical or electronic accessories or components that are added to the vehicle by the authorized dealer or the owner, may adversely affect battery performance and durability, and may also adversely affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.

FORD ESP EXTENDED SERVICE PLANS (U.S. ONLY)

More than 32 million Ford and Lincoln owners have discovered the powerful protection of Ford ESP. It is the only extended service plan backed by Ford Motor Company, and provides “peace of mind” protection beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage.

Up to 500+ Covered Vehicle Components

There are four, new-vehicle Extended Service Plans with different levels of coverage. Ask your dealer for details.

PremiumCare – Our most comprehensive coverage. With over 500 covered components, this plan is so complete that we generally only discuss what’s not covered!

ExtraCare – Covers 113 components, and includes many high-tech items.

BaseCare – Covers 84 components.

PowertrainCare – Covers 29 critical components.

Ford ESP is honored by all Ford and Lincoln Dealers in the U.S. and Canada It’s the only extended service plan authorized and backed by Ford Motor Company. That means you get:

- Reliable, quality service anywhere you go.
- **Factory-trained technicians.**
- **Ford Authorized Parts used with every covered repair.**

Rental car reimbursement

If your vehicle is kept overnight for covered repairs, you are eligible for rental car coverage, including Bumper-to-Bumper warranty repairs, or manufacturer’s recalls.

Transferable coverage

If you sell your vehicle before your Ford ESP coverage expires, you can transfer any remaining coverage to the new owner. Whenever you’re ready to sell your car, prospective buyers may feel better about taking a risk on your used vehicle. Ford ESP may add resale value!

Plus, **exclusive 24/7 roadside assistance**, including:

- Towing, flat-tire change and battery jump starts.
- Out-of-fuel and lock-out assistance.
- Travel expense reimbursement for lodging, meals and rental car.
- Destination assistance for taxi, shuttle, rental car coverage and emergency transportation.

Ford ESP Can Quickly Pay for Itself

One service bill – the cost of parts and labor – can easily exceed the price of your Ford ESP Service Contract. With Ford ESP, you minimize your risk for unexpected repair bills and rising repair costs.

Avoid the rising cost of properly maintaining your vehicle!

Ford ESP also offers a Premium Maintenance Plan that covers items that **routinely wear out**.

The coverage is prepaid, so you never have to worry about affording your vehicle maintenance. It covers regular checkups, routine inspections, preventive care and replacement of items that require periodic attention for **normal “wear”**:

- **Wiper blades**
- **Spark plugs (except California)**
- **Clutch disc**
- **Brake pads and linings**
- **Shock absorbers**
- **Belts and hoses**

Contact your selling Ford or Lincoln dealership today so they can customize a Ford Extended Service Plan that fits your driving lifestyle and budget.

Interest free finance options available

Take advantage of our installment payment plan, just a 10% down payment will provide you with an affordable no interest, no-fee payment opportunity.

Protect Yourself From the Rising Cost of Vehicle Repairs With a Ford Extended Service Plan

To learn more, call our Ford ESP specialists at 800-367-3377, and don't forget to ask about our interest free payment program, allowing you all the security and benefits Ford ESP has to offer while paying over time. You're pre-approved with no credit checks, no hassels!

Or, mail your name, address, city, state and zip code to:

Ford ESP
P.O. Box 8072
Royal Oak, MI 48068-9933

FORD ESP EXTENDED SERVICE PLANS (CANADA ONLY)

You can get more protection for your vehicle by purchasing a Ford Extended Service Plan (ESP). Ford ESP is the only service contract backed by Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited. Depending on the plan you purchase, Ford ESP provides benefits such as:

- Rental reimbursement
- Coverage for certain maintenance and wear items
- Protection against repair costs after your New Vehicle Limited Warranty Coverage expires
- Roadside Assistance benefits

There are several Ford ESP plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations. Each plan is tailored to fit your own driving needs, including reimbursement for towing and rental.

When you purchase Ford ESP, you receive added peace-of-mind protection throughout Canada and the United States, provided by a network of participating Ford Motor Company dealers. The Lincoln Maintenance Protection Plan is honored at authorized Lincoln dealers.

Note: Repairs performed outside of Canada and the United States are not eligible for Ford ESP coverage.

This information is subject to change.

For more information, visit your local Ford of Canada dealer or www.ford.ca to find the Ford Extended Service Plan that is right for you.

GENERAL MAINTENANCE INFORMATION**Why Maintain Your Vehicle?**

Carefully following this schedule helps protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance and may also help to increase the value of your vehicle when you sell or trade it.

It is your responsibility to see that all scheduled maintenance is performed and that the materials used meet Ford engineering specifications as identified in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter. Failure to perform scheduled maintenance specific in this guide will invalidate warranty coverage on parts affected by the lack of maintenance. Be sure receipts for completed maintenance are kept with the vehicle and confirmation of the work performed is always recorded in this guide.

Your dealer has factory-trained technicians who can perform the required maintenance using genuine Ford parts. They are committed to meeting your service needs and to assuring your continuing satisfaction.

Protecting Your Investment

Maintenance is an investment that will pay dividends in the form of improved reliability, durability and resale value. To maintain the proper performance of your vehicle and its emission control systems, it is imperative that scheduled maintenance be completed at the designated intervals.

Your vehicle is very sophisticated and built with multiple, complex, performance systems. Every manufacturer develops these systems using different specifications and performance features. That is why it is important to rely upon your dealership to properly diagnose and repair your vehicle.

Ford Motor Company has recommended maintenance intervals for various parts and component systems based upon engineering testing. Ford Motor Company relies upon this testing to determine the most appropriate mileage for replacement of oils and fluids to protect your vehicle at the lowest overall cost to you and recommends against maintenance schedules that deviate from the scheduled maintenance information.

Ford strongly recommends the use of only genuine Ford, Motorcraft® or Ford-authorized remanufactured replacement parts because they are engineered for your vehicle.

Additives and Chemicals

Ford Motor Company recommended additives and chemicals are listed in the owner manual and in the Ford Workshop Manual. Additional chemicals or additives not approved by Ford Motor Company are not recommended as part of normal maintenance. Please consult your warranty information.

Oils, Fluids and Flushing

In many cases, fluid discoloration is a normal operating characteristic and, by itself, does not necessarily indicate a concern or that the fluid needs to be changed. However, discolored fluids that also show signs of overheating and foreign material contamination should be inspected immediately by a qualified expert, such as the factory-trained technicians at your dealership. Your vehicle's oils and fluids should be changed at the specified intervals or in conjunction with a repair. Flushing is a viable way to change fluid for many vehicle sub-systems during scheduled maintenance. It is critical that systems are flushed only with new fluid that is the same as that required to fill and operate the system, or using a Ford-approved flushing chemical.

Genuine Ford Parts and Service

When planning your maintenance services, consider your dealership for all your vehicle's needs.

There are a lot of reasons why visiting your dealership for all your service needs is a great way to help keep your vehicle running great.

Convenience

Many dealerships have extended evening and Saturday hours to make your service visit more convenient. How's that for quality service?

Factory-trained Technicians

Service technicians participate in extensive factory-sponsored certification training to help them become experts on the operation of your vehicle. Ask your dealership about the training and certification their technicians have received.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft® Replacement Parts

Dealerships stock Ford and Motorcraft® branded remanufactured replacement parts. These parts meet or exceed Ford Motor Company's specifications, and we stand behind them. Parts installed at your dealership carry a nationwide, 12 month/12,000 mile (20,000 km) parts and labor limited warranty. Your dealer can give you details.

Value Shopping for Your Vehicle’s Maintenance Needs

Your dealership recognizes the competitive landscape of maintenance and light repair automotive services. With factory-trained technicians, and one-stop service from routine maintenance like oil changes and tire rotations to repairs like brake service, check out the value your dealers can offer.

Owner Checks and Services

Certain basic maintenance checks and inspections should be performed by the owner or a service technician at the intervals indicated. Service information and supporting specifications are provided in this owner’s guide.

Any adverse condition should be brought to the attention of your dealer or qualified service technician as soon as possible for the proper service advice. The owner maintenance service checks are generally not covered by warranties so you may be charged for labor, parts or fluids used.


Coolant change intervals	
Initial change	10 years or 150,000 miles (240,000 km) (whichever comes first)
After initial change	Every 5 years or 50,000 miles (80,000 km)
Check every month	
Function of all interior and exterior lights	
Tires for wear and proper pressure, including spare	
Windshield washer fluid level	
Check every six months	
Battery connections; clean if necessary	
Body and door drain holes for obstructions; clean if necessary	
Cooling system fluid level and coolant strength	
Door weatherstrips for wear; lubricate if necessary	
Hinges/latches/outside locks for proper operation; lubricate if necessary	
Parking brake for proper operation	
Safety belts and seat latches for wear and function	
Safety warning lamps (brake, ABS, airbag, safety belt) for operation	
Washer spray/wiper operation; clean or replace blades as necessary	

Multi-Point Inspection

In order to keep your vehicle running right, it is important to have the systems on your vehicle checked regularly. This can help identify potential issues and prevent major problems. Ford Motor Company recommends the following multi-point inspection be performed at every scheduled maintenance interval to help make sure your vehicle keeps running great.

Multi-point inspection – Recommended each visit	
Battery performance	Radiator, cooler, heater and A/C hoses
Exterior lamps and hazard warning system operation	Suspension component for leaks or damage
Fluid levels*; fill if necessary	Tires for wear and proper pressure, including spare
For oil and fluid leaks	Steering and linkage
Half-shaft dust boots (if equipped)	Windshield for cracks, chips or pits
Horn operation	Washer spray and wiper operation
*Brake, coolant recovery reservoir and window washer	

Be sure to ask your dealership service advisor or technician about the multi-point vehicle inspection. It's a comprehensive way to perform a thorough inspection of your vehicle. It's your checklist that gives you immediate feedback on the overall condition of your vehicle. You'll know what's been checked, what's okay, as well as those things that may require future or immediate attention. The multi-point vehicle inspection is one more way to keep your vehicle running great!



LINK & PIN

GENUINE
PARTS & SERVICE

Owner Advantage
Member's Member #:
Member's Serial # Balance

Multi-Point Inspection Report Card as Recommended by Ford Motor Company

Name: _____ Date: _____ Day(s): _____ State Inspection Month: _____

Home Address: _____ Mile/Week/Year: _____

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE / INSPECTION		FOR SERVICE ON THIS MODEL	
<input type="checkbox"/> Engine Air Filter	<input type="checkbox"/> Oil	<input type="checkbox"/> Oil Filter	<input type="checkbox"/> Spark Plugs
<input type="checkbox"/> Engine Coolant	<input type="checkbox"/> Tire Rotation	<input type="checkbox"/> Transmission Fluid	<input type="checkbox"/> Fuel Charge

*This is only a partial list of vehicle maintenance items and is NOT all-inclusive. Please consult your Owner's Manual or visit www.ford.com/owners for vehicle specific maintenance requirements.

CHECK FLUID LEVELS AND FILL		CHECK	
<input type="checkbox"/> Oil and/or Oil Additives	<input type="checkbox"/> Coolant	<input type="checkbox"/> Brake Fluid	<input type="checkbox"/> Power Steering
<input type="checkbox"/> Windshield Washer	<input type="checkbox"/> Windshield Washer	<input type="checkbox"/> Windshield Washer	<input type="checkbox"/> Windshield Washer

BATTERY		CHECK	
State of Health	Condition of Cell	<input type="checkbox"/> Battery Terminals	<input type="checkbox"/> Battery Connections

EXTERIOR BODY		CHECK	
<input type="checkbox"/> Body Damage	<input type="checkbox"/> Body Damage	<input type="checkbox"/> Body Damage	<input type="checkbox"/> Body Damage

TIRE/BRAKE WEAR		CHECK	
<input type="checkbox"/> Tire Tread	<input type="checkbox"/> Tire Tread	<input type="checkbox"/> Tire Tread	<input type="checkbox"/> Tire Tread

Comments: _____

Service Advisor: _____ Customer Signature: _____

Technician: _____

12-XXXXXXXX

© 2013 Ford Motor Company. All Rights Reserved. Customer Copy

NORMAL SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE AND LOG

Normal Scheduled Maintenance	
At every 1 year or 10,000 miles (16,000 km) service interval ¹	Rotate tires, inspect tire wear and measure tread depth
	Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)
	Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake linings, hoses and parking brake
	Inspect cabin air filter (if equipped)
	Inspect cooling system level, strength and hoses
	Inspect half-shaft boots (if equipped)
	Inspect steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie-rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints; lubricate if equipped with grease fittings
Every 20,000 miles (32,000 km)	Inspect wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag
	Replace cabin air filter (if equipped)
At 10 years or 150,000 miles (240,000 km) ²	Change coolant and coolant filter*
¹ Do not exceed 1 year or 10,000 miles (16,000 km) between service intervals	
² Initial replacement at 10 years or 150,000 miles (240,000 km), then every 5 years or 50,000 miles (80,000 km). The coolant must be exchanged as indicated in the Ford Motor Company <i>Workshop Manual</i> . If not performed properly, damage could occur to the cooling system components. Only use pre-mixed coolant that meets Ford Motor Company specifications found in the <i>Maintenance and Specifications</i> chapter.	

Scheduled Maintenance

357

Maintenance Schedule Log

DEALER VALIDATION:	DEALER VALIDATION:
P&A CODE:	P&A CODE:
RO#: HOURS:	RO#: HOURS:
DATE: MILEAGE:	DATE: MILEAGE:
DEALER VALIDATION:	DEALER VALIDATION:
P&A CODE:	P&A CODE:
RO#: HOURS:	RO#: HOURS:
DATE: MILEAGE:	DATE: MILEAGE:
DEALER VALIDATION:	DEALER VALIDATION:
P&A CODE:	P&A CODE:
RO#: HOURS:	RO#: HOURS:
DATE: MILEAGE:	DATE: MILEAGE:
DEALER VALIDATION:	DEALER VALIDATION:
P&A CODE:	P&A CODE:
RO#: HOURS:	RO#: HOURS:
DATE: MILEAGE:	DATE: MILEAGE:
DEALER VALIDATION:	DEALER VALIDATION:
P&A CODE:	P&A CODE:
RO#: HOURS:	RO#: HOURS:
DATE: MILEAGE:	DATE: MILEAGE:

Scheduled Maintenance

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>

Scheduled Maintenance

359

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>

COOLANT AND COOLANT FILTER CHANGE RECORD

Initial change	10 years or 150000 miles (240000 km) (whichever comes first)
After initial change	Every five years or 50000 miles (80000 km)

Coolant and Coolant Filter Change Log

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&A CODE:</p> <p>RO#: HOURS:</p> <p>DATE: MILEAGE:</p>

GENERAL INFORMATION**SYNC® End User License Agreement (EULA)**

- You have acquired a device (“DEVICE”) that includes software licensed by FORD MOTOR COMPANY from an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation (“MS”). Those installed software products of MS origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and “online” or electronic documentation (“MS SOFTWARE”) are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The MS SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY. The additional software and systems of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and “online” or electronic documentation (“FORD SOFTWARE”) are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The FORD SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE and/or FORD SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by third party software and service suppliers. The additional software and services of third party origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and “online” or electronic documentation (“THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE”) are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE, FORD SOFTWARE and THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE hereinafter collectively and individually will be referred to as “SOFTWARE.”

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (“EULA”), DO NOT USE THE DEVICE OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICE, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICE and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

DESCRIPTION OF OTHER RIGHTS AND LIMITATIONS:

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICE and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICE, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY or MS may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Security Updates/Digital Rights Management:** Content owners use the WMDRM technology included in your DEVICE to protect their intellectual property, included copyrighted content. Portions of the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE use WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected content. If the WMDRM software fails to protect the content, content owners may ask Microsoft to revoke the

SOFTWARE's ability to use WMDRM to play or copy protected content. This action does not affect unprotected content. When your DEVICE downloads licenses for protected content, you agree that Microsoft may include a revocation list with the licenses. Content owners may require you to upgrade the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you will not be able to access content that requires the upgrade.

- **Consent to Use of Data:** You agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may collect and use technical information gathered in any manner as part of product support services related to the SOFTWARE or related services. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and services suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may use this information solely to improve their products or to provide customized services or technologies to you. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may disclose this information to others, but not in a form that personally identifies you.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICE.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components").

If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply.

If MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent make available Supplemental Components, and no other EULA terms are

provided, then the terms of this EULA shall apply, except that the MS, Microsoft Corporation or affiliate entity providing the Supplemental Component(s) shall be the licensor of the Supplemental Component(s).

FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The MS SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites through the use of the SOFTWARE. The third party sites are not under the control of MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent. Neither MS nor Microsoft Corporation nor their affiliates nor their designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICE operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and assumes any risk associated with the use of the DEVICE.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA: If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICE on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICE as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS: All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets," incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or their affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual

property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service providers, their affiliates and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments. For additional information, see <http://www.microsoft.com/exporting/>.

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, third party software or service providers, their affiliates or suppliers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Product support for the SOFTWARE is not provided by MS, its parent corporation Microsoft Corporation, or their affiliates or subsidiaries. For product support, please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICE. Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICE.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND/OR THEIR AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR ANY AMOUNT IN EXCESS OF U.S. TWO HUNDRED FIFTY DOLLARS (U.S.\$250.00).

- THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY EXPRESSLY BE PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

End user notice**Microsoft® Windows® Mobile for Automotive Important Safety Information**

This system Ford SYNC™ contains software that is licensed to Manufacturer FORD MOTOR COMPANY by an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation pursuant to a license agreement. Any removal, reproduction, reverse engineering or other unauthorized use of the software from this system in violation of the license agreement is strictly prohibited and may subject you to legal action.

Read and follow instructions

Before using your Windows Automotive-based system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual (“User’s Guide”). Not following precautions found in this User’s Guide can lead to an accident or other serious consequences.

Keep User’s Guide in Vehicle

When kept in the vehicle, the User’s Guide will be a ready reference for you and other users unfamiliar with the Windows Automotive-based system. Please make certain that before using the system for the first time, all persons have access to the User’s Guide and read its instructions and safety information carefully.



WARNING: Operating certain parts of this system while driving can distract your attention away from the road, and possibly cause an accident or other serious consequences. Do not change system settings or enter data non-verbally (using your hands) while driving. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations. This is important since while setting up or changing some functions you might be required to distract your attention away from the road and remove your hands from the wheel.

General operation**Voice Command Control**

Functions within the Windows Automotive-based system may be accomplished using only voice commands. Using voice commands while driving allows you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel.

Prolonged Views of Screen

Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before

attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention. Even occasional short scans to the screen may be hazardous if your attention has been diverted away from your driving task at a critical time.

Volume Setting

Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.

Use of Speech Recognition Functions

Speech recognition software is inherently a statistical process which is subject to errors. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system and address any errors.

Navigation Features

Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.

Distraction Hazard

Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can seriously distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious consequences. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.

Let Your Judgment Prevail

Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

Route Safety

Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.

Potential Map Inaccuracy

Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.

Emergency Services

Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

TeleNav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software.

TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software: (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely; (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions; (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked; (d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement; (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3. Software License

Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License limitations

You agree not to do any of the following: (a) reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; (b) attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; (c) remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; (d) distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or (e) use the TeleNav Software in any manner that (i) infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party, (ii) violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or (iii) is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

4. Disclaimers

To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas. TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR 09/22/09 - 10 of 19 - Confidential GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS

SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial.

This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of laws provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1 This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2 Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3 By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

8.4 TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5 If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

8.6 The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including," and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation."

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

The TeleNav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to TeleNav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the TeleNav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to TeleNav's third party vendor licensors:

NavTeq End User License Agreement**END USER TERMS**

The content provided ("Data") is licensed, not sold. By opening this package, or installing, copying, or otherwise using the Data, you agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. If you do not agree to the terms of this agreement, you are not permitted to install, copy, use, resell or transfer the Data. If you wish to reject the terms of this agreement, and have not installed, copied, or used the Data, you must contact your retailer or NAVTEQ North America, LLC ("NT") within thirty (30) days of purchase for a refund of your purchase price. To contact NT, please visit www.navteq.com.

The Data is provided for your personal, internal use only and may not be resold. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms (this "End User License Agreement") and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAVTEQ North America, LLC ("NT") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®.

NT holds a nonexclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

© United States Postal Service® 2009. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.

The Data for Mexico includes certain Data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

TERMS AND CONDITIONS

License Limitations on Use: You agree that your license to use this Data is limited to and conditioned on use for solely personal, noncommercial purposes, and not for service bureau, timesharing or other similar purposes. Except as otherwise set forth herein, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

License Limitations on Transfer: Your limited license does not allow transfer or resale of the Data, except on the condition that you may transfer the Data and all accompanying materials on a permanent basis if: (a) you retain no copies of the Data; (b) the recipient agrees to the terms of this End User License Agreement; and (c) you transfer the Data in the exact same form as you purchased it by physically transferring the original media (e.g., the CD-ROM or DVD you purchased), all original packaging, all Manuals and other documentation. Specifically, Multi-disc sets may only be transferred or sold as a complete set as provided to you and not as a subset thereof.

Additional License Limitations: Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NT in a separate written agreement, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, your license is conditioned on use of the Data as prescribed in this agreement, and you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with, or in communication with, including without limitation, cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.



WARNING: This Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic Data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty: This Data is provided to you “as is”, and you agree to use it at your own risk. NT and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: NT AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: NT AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THIS DATA; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS DATA, ANY DEFECT IN THIS DATA, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NT OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control: You agree not to export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit NT from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement: These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NT (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Severability: You and NT agree that if any portion of this agreement is found illegal or unenforceable, that portion shall be severed and the remainder of the Agreement shall be given full force and effect.

Governing Law: The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the personal jurisdiction of the State of Illinois for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users: If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a “commercial item” as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. (“FAR”) 2.101, is licensed in accordance with this End User License Agreement, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following “Notice of Use”, and be treated in accordance with such Notice:

NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER)

NAME:

NAVTEQ

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER)

ADDRESS:

425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, IL 60606.

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to the EndUser License Agreement under which this Data was provided.

© 2011 NAVTEQ. All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify NAVTEQ prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

Wi-Fi hotspot data provided by JiWire ©2013 JiWire.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music — related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000–2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000–2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents #5,987,525; #6,061,680; #6,154,773, #6,161,132, #6,230,192, #6,230,207, #6,240,459, #6,330,593, and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: #6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device

This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS." NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE

FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER.

© Gracenote 2007

FCC ID: KMHSYNG2 IC: 1422A-SYNG2

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.



WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

-
- 911 Assist™94
- A**
- Accessing and using your USB
port74
- Accessing your calendar94
- Accessory delay144
- Adding (pairing) a phone81
- AdvanceTrac261
- Airbag supplemental restraint
system194–195, 203, 205
and child safety seats196
description195, 203, 205
disposal209
driver airbag197, 204, 207
indicator light202, 209
operation197, 204, 207
passenger airbag197, 204, 207
side airbag203
- Air filter, cabin342
- Ambient mood/lighting134
- AM/FM60
- Anti-lock brake system
(see Brakes)259
- Anti-theft system168–169
arming the system169–170
disarming a triggered
system170
triggering170
- Audio system
Single CD39
- Audio system (see Radio)39
- Automatic transaxle
fluid, adding340
fluid, checking340
- Automatic transmission267
- fluid, refill capacities343
fluid, specification343
- Auxiliary Input Jack70
- Auxiliary powerpoint142
- A/V inputs40, 78
- B**
- Battery328
acid, treating emergencies328
jumping a disabled battery303
maintenance-free328
replacement, specifications342
servicing328
traction battery pack
assembly330
- Belt-Minder®190
- Blind spot mirror276
- Booster seats223
- Brakes258–259
anti-lock259
anti-lock brake system (ABS)
warning light259
fluid, checking and adding340
fluid, refill capacities343
fluid, specifications343
lubricant specifications343
parking261
shift interlock265
- Break-in period6
- Bulbs134
- C**
- Capacities for refilling fluids343
- Cargo management system152
- CD39
- CD player72

-
- Fleet MyKey programming153
 - Floor mats150–151
 - Fluid capacities343
 - Fuses280, 282
 - G**
 - Gauges20
 - Guidance for electric and hybrid-electric vehicles307
 - H**
 - Hazard flashers279
 - HD Radio™62
 - Headlamps129
 - aiming131
 - autolamp system129
 - bulb specifications135
 - daytime running lights130
 - flash to pass130
 - high beam130
 - replacing bulbs136
 - turning on and off129
 - Head restraints171
 - Heated steering wheel109
 - Heating123
 - Help108
 - High-voltage battery
 - charging331
 - service disconnect336
 - High-voltage shut off280
 - Hill start assist268
 - Hood325
 - How to use voice commands54
 - I**
 - Ignition255
 - Illuminated visor mirror141
 - Infant seats
 - (see Safety seats)214
 - Infotainment display52
 - Instrument panel
 - cleaning321
 - cluster16
 - lighting up panel and interior131
 - Intelligent Access Key153
 - Intelligent Access with push button start162
 - J**
 - Jack291
 - positioning291
 - storage291
 - Jump-starting your vehicle303
 - K**
 - Keyless entry system
 - autolock160
 - Keys169
 - positions of the ignition255
 - L**
 - Lamps129
 - autolamp system129
 - bulb replacement
 - specifications chart135
 - daytime running light130
 - headlamps129
 - headlamps, flash to pass130
 - instrument panel, dimming ...131
 - interior lamps133–134
 - replacing bulbs136
 - LATCH anchors218

Lights, warning and indicator ....16	P
anti-lock brakes (ABS) .....259	Pairing other phones .....81
Listening to music .....59	Pairing your phone .....80
Load limits .....248	Pairing your phone for the
Locks	first time .....80
autolock .....160	Parental MyKey
childproof .....161	programming .....153
doors .....159	Parking brake .....261
Lubricant specifications .....343	Parts
Lug nuts .....302	(see Motorcraft® parts) .....342
M	Passenger Occupant
Making and receiving calls .....81	Classification Sensor .....183
MAP DVD - Loading and	Phone settings .....85, 104
Unloading .....81	Phone voice commands .....86
Map icons .....119	POI categories .....114
Map mode .....118	Point of Interest (POI) .....114
Map preferences .....116	Power distribution box
Map updates .....121	(see Fuses) .....287
Message center	Power door locks .....159
warning messages .....29	Power mirrors .....145
Mirrors .....145	Powerpoint .....142
fold away .....146	Power steering .....264
heated .....146	Power Windows .....142
side view mirrors (power) .....145	Privacy information .....51
signal .....146	Push button start system .....256
Motorcraft® parts .....323, 342	Q
MyFord Touch™ system .....46	Quick touch buttons .....120
MyKey .....153	R
N	Radio .....39
Navigation features .....112	AM/FM .....60
Navigation voice commands ....121	Single CD .....39
Notifications .....93	

-
- Radio voice commands66
 - Rear view camera display99
 - Rear-view camera system271
 - Rear window defroster123
 - Receiving a text message84
 - Recommendations for
 - attaching safety restraints
 - for children212
 - Relays280
 - Remote entry system161–162
 - illuminated entry165–166
 - locking/unlocking doors163
 - opening the trunk164
 - replacement/additional
 - transmitters165
 - replacing the batteries164
 - Reverse sensing system269
 - Roadside assistance278
 - Route preferences116
- S**
- Safety belts (see Safety restraints)185–187, 189
 - Safety defects, reporting317
 - Safety information49
 - Safety restraints185–187, 189
 - Belt-Minder®190
 - extension assembly189
 - for adults186–187
 - for children209
 - Occupant Classification
 - Sensor183
 - warning light and chime189–190
 - Safety restraints -
 - LATCH anchors218
 - Safety seats for children214
 - Safety Compliance
 - Certification Label344
 - Satellite Radio67
 - Satellite Radio Information42
 - Scheduled Maintenance Guide
 - Normal Scheduled
 - Maintenance and Log356
 - SD card40, 74, 112
 - Seats171
 - child safety seats214
 - heated177
 - SecuriLock passive anti-theft
 - system168
 - Sending new text messages83
 - Servicing your vehicle324
 - Setting a destination112
 - Setting a destination
 - by voice112
 - Settings98
 - Setting the clock98
 - Side air curtain205
 - SIRIUS® satellite radio67
 - SIRIUS satellite radio voice
 - commands69
 - SIRIUS Travel Link91
 - SIRIUS Travel Link voice
 - commands92
 - SOS Post Crash Alert209
 - Specification chart,
 - lubricants343
 - Speed control146
 - Starting your vehicle255
 - jump starting303

push button start system	256	Touchscreen features (climate)	109
Steering wheel		Towing	254
controls	149	recreational towing	254
tilting	141	trailer towing	254
Supported media file types	77	wrecker	306
Supported player, media formats and metadata information	77	Traffic preferences	116
SYNC® Services	87	Transmission	
System settings	100	brake-shift interlock (BSI)	265
T		fluid, checking and adding (automatic)	340
Temperature control (see Climate control)	109, 123	fluid, refill capacities	343
Temporary mobility kit	293	lubricant specifications	343
Text messaging	83	Trunk	151
Tilt steering wheel	141	remote release	164
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)		Turn signal	133
Tires, Wheels and Loading	244	U	
Tires	228–229, 291	USB port	40, 74
alignment	237	V	
care	233	Vehicle health report	96
changing	291	Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)	344
checking the pressure	233	Vehicle loading	248
inflating	230	Voice recognition	54
label	243	W	
replacing	235	Warning lights (see Lights)	16
rotating	238	Washer fluid	327
safety practices	237	Water, Driving through	277
sidewall information	238	Wi-Fi	106
snow tires and chains	248	Windows	
spare tire	291	power	142
Temporary mobility kit	293	rear wiper/washer	140
terminology	229		
tire grades	229		
treadwear	228, 233		

Windshield washer fluid and wipers		replacing wiper blades ...327–328
checking and adding fluid	327	
operation	139	
		Wrecker towing
		306